

ESING - UNSO

Nghe là nhớ!



**GIÁO TRÌNH LUYỆN THI
ENGLISH A2**

~ HÀ NỘI 2020 ~

LỜI NÓI ĐẦU

Giáo trình Tiếng Anh A2 cung cấp chương trình tiếp theo giáo trình A1 mà các bạn đã học. Cũng như giáo trình Tiếng Anh A1, phần này được biên soạn theo chương trình khung do Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo quy định. Quyển sách vừa ôn luyện và củng cố các kiến thức bạn đã được học trong phần 1, vừa tiếp tục cung cấp vốn kiến thức ngữ pháp cơ bản như thì tương lai đơn, thì hiện tại tiếp diễn, thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn, thì quá khứ tiếp diễn, câu tường thuật, câu điều kiện có thực, câu điều kiện không có thực ở hiện tại và quá khứ... Quyển sách cũng cung cấp vốn từ vựng đi kèm, giúp cho các bạn luyện ngữ âm và các kỹ năng nghe, nói, đọc, viết.

Quyển gồm 10 Unit, đòi hỏi 60 tiết trên lớp, tương đương ít nhất 100 tiết tự học. Như các bạn đã có kinh nghiệm học ở phần A1, trước khi vào bài, nên xem kỹ các phần như Giới thiệu và Mục đích của bài để hiểu khái quát và thấy được những yêu cầu về kiến thức và thực hành kỹ năng. Trong khi học từng phần Hội thoại, Cấu trúc, Nghe, Đọc, bạn cần đọc kỹ và làm các Bài tập luyện theo đúng những yêu cầu, hướng dẫn đi kèm. Khi gặp những từ hay cụm từ chưa rõ nghĩa, bạn nên tham khảo phần từ vựng trong bài hoặc tra từ điển. Sau Bảng từ vựng là Bài tập củng cố có đáp án đi kèm và bạn cần phải làm bài tập đều đặn trong quá trình học. Phần Tóm tắt tổng kết kiến thức bạn đã học trong bài. Khi làm bài Tự kiểm tra, bạn nên tuân thủ theo đúng khoảng thời gian tối đa bài đã đề ra. Nếu kết quả bài kiểm tra ở mức tốt thì tức là bạn đã nắm bài tốt và có thể chuyển sang Unit tiếp theo, còn nếu chưa đạt yêu cầu hay kết quả chưa cao thì bạn nên đọc kỹ lại lý thuyết và làm luyên thêm.

Quyển bài giảng đã được xây dựng theo phương pháp giao tiếp, nhằm giúp cho các bạn được thực hành trong các tình huống gần với đời thực. Các kiến thức trong quyển được diễn giải một cách rõ ràng, đồng thời có những phần liên hệ, so sánh, khái quát để giúp cho các bạn trong quá trình tự học sẽ nắm bài tốt hơn. Đi kèm với cuốn sách, các bạn sẽ cần bộ băng hoặc đĩa nghe để giúp bạn học hiệu quả hơn. Sau khi học xong quyển sách này, các bạn đã có vốn kiến thức tiếng Anh cơ bản để tiếp tục các khoá học tiếp theo của chương trình.

Các tác giả đã rất cố gắng tuy nhiên do điều kiện thời gian hạn hẹp nên những thiếu sót trong quyển bài giảng là khó tránh khỏi. Chúng tôi rất mong và xin cảm ơn sự đóng góp ý kiến của bạn bè đồng nghiệp và các học viên.

Nhóm tác giả

UNIT 1. WHO'S WHO?

INTRODUCTION

Bây giờ bạn bắt đầu học bài 1. Trong bài này, bạn sẽ ôn lại cách đặt câu sử dụng thì hiện tại đơn, hiện tại tiếp diễn và quá khứ đơn. Bạn sẽ phải nhận biết được sự khác biệt về cấu trúc và cách sử dụng của các thì đó.

Bạn cũng sẽ luyện cấu trúc mô tả diện mạo, cấu trúc so sánh. Bạn sẽ được cung cấp phần từ vựng về các trạng từ chỉ tần suất.

Bây giờ bạn hãy xem phần Mục đích của bài 1.

UNIT OBJECTIVES

Phần "Mục đích bài học" giúp bạn biết cụ thể những gì mà bạn sẽ học trong bài.

Học xong Bài 1 bạn đã ôn lại những vấn đề:

1. Sử dụng những cấu trúc chào hỏi và giới thiệu thông tin cá nhân.
2. Mô tả diện mạo con người.
3. Sử dụng thì hiện tại đơn.
4. Sử dụng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn.
5. Sử dụng thì quá khứ đơn.
6. Sử dụng các trạng từ chỉ tần suất (frequency adverbs và adverbials).
7. So sánh.
8. Sử dụng cấu trúc diễn tả sự thay đổi.
9. Sử dụng một số các cụm từ để nối ý trong hội thoại (connecting expressions in conversation).
10. Phân biệt cách phát âm của "i".

1A. DIALOGUE

Trước hết bạn hãy nghe các đoạn hội thoại (Unit 1. Dialogue). Trong hội thoại, các nhân vật sẽ giới thiệu, làm quen với nhau. Tất cả các cấu trúc, các từ đều đã quen thuộc vì bạn đã được học ở quyển 1. Phần này chỉ là ôn tập lại. Bạn hãy nghe và sắp xếp lại từng đoạn theo đúng trật tự.

1. A: Professor Andrews, this is Doctor Baxter.

- B: How do you do?
C: How do you do?
2. A: Excuse me. Aren't you Henry Pollard?
B: Yes, that's right.
3. A: Where are you from?
B: India.
A: Whereabouts in India?
4. A: Hello, Al. How are you?
B: Fine, thanks, Eric. Nice to see you again.
5. A: May I introduce myself? My name's Susan Roper.
B: Oh, hello. I'm John Lee. I'm sorry, I didn't catch your name.
6. A: Sally, do you know Steve?
B: No. How do you do?
C: Hello, Sally. I'm glad to meet you.
7. A: Tony, I'd like to introduce my friend Mary Parker.
B: Oh, hello. I've heard so much about you.
C: Hello.

Bạn cần lưu ý cách thức tự giới thiệu (May I introduce myself? My name's Susan Roper.), cách giới thiệu 2 người làm quen với nhau (Tony, I'd like to introduce my friend Mary Parker./ Sally, do you know Steve? / Professor Andrews, this is Doctor Baxter.), cách chào hỏi làm quen khi lần đầu gặp nhau (How do you do?). Bạn cũng cần phân biệt sự khác nhau khi sử dụng câu trúc "How do you do?" (dùng để chào hỏi) với câu trúc "How are you?" (dùng để hỏi th_m).

1B. STRUCTURE

Structure 1: Be, Have got and Can

Sau đây là một số câu sử dụng động từ **Be**, **Have got** và **Can**.

You're too old. Maybe you're right. Yes, you are. We're the same age. Yes, we are. My eyes are a bit small.	You haven't got any money. I can speak three languages. He can dance all night. Yes, he can. You can't dance. I can't say the same.
--	--

Unit 1. Who's who?

They're pretty. Yes, they are. He's got a great sense of humour. Yes, he has. You've got pretty eyes.	No, he isn't. Age isn't important. Why isn't she happy? He hasn't got any hair. No, he hasn't.
---	--

Note 1

Hãy ôn lại cách chia các động từ đó.

Be Have got Can		
I am We/ You/ They are He/ She/ It is	I/ You/ We/ They have got He/ She/ It has got	I/ He/ She/ It can swim <i>etc.</i>
Am I? Are we/ you/ they? Is he/ she/it?	Have I/ you/ we/ they got? Has he/ she/ it got?	Can you swim? <i>etc.</i>
I am not (I'm not) We/ You/ They are not (We're not/ we aren't) <i>etc.</i> He/ She/ It is not (He's not/ He isn't <i>etc.</i>)	I have not (haven't) got He/ She/ It has not (hasn't) got <i>etc.</i>	I cannot (can't) swim <i>etc.</i>

Structure Practice 1

Sau khi đọc xong phần Ghi chú 1, hãy làm bài tập theo yêu cầu.



Hãy nhìn tranh và điền từ thích hợp vào các câu.

1. B hasn't got any
2. F has got lovely brown
3. C has got a nose.
4. A has got hair.
5. D is very
6. E is wearing

Structure 2: Simple Present Tense (Thì hiện tại đơn)

Như bạn đã học ở quyển 1, các động từ chia ở thì hiện tại đơn như sau: Các ngôi thứ nhất (I, We), thứ 2 (You) và thứ 3 số nhiều (They) chia giống động từ nguyên thể. Còn ngôi thứ 3 số ít (He/ She/ It) thì thêm "s" vào sau động từ nguyên thể. Tuy nhiên trừ một số trường hợp đặc biệt.

Ví dụ: stops wishes watches misses plays tries goes does —

Thì hiện tại đơn được dùng để diễn tả:

- Những sự việc luôn luôn đúng, là quy luật

Light and heat come from the sun.

- Những sự việc xảy ra ã hiện tại

Today he goes to the cinema with Anne.

- Những sự việc xảy ra thường xuyên, lặp đi lặp lại

I always study from five to seven o'clock.

Những sự việc xảy ra thường xuyên, lặp đi lặp lại thì thường đi với các trạng từ chỉ tần suất (frequency adverbs).

Structure Practice 2

Hãy viết dạng đúng của động từ.

1. My father always Sunday dinner. (*make*)
2. Ruth eggs; they her ill. (*not eat; make*)
3. "Have you got a light, by any chance?" "Sorry, I" (*smoke*)
4. Where Mark to school? (*go*)
5. your parents your girlfriend? (*like*)
6. How often you swimming? (*go*)
7. Where your sister? (*work*)
8. Ann usually lunch. (*not have*)
9. Who the ironing in your house? (*do*)

10. We out during the week. (*not go*)
11. My uncle a lot. (*worry*)
12. Veronica Mastermind every week. (*watch*)

Sau khi học xong phần Thực hành câu trúc 2, bạn chuyển tiếp sang học Câu trúc 3, nói về frequency adverbs và adverbials.

Structure 3: Frequency adverbs and adverbials

Các trạng từ chỉ tần suất được sử dụng để diễn tả các sự việc xảy ra thường xuyên như một thói quen. Hãy xem các ví dụ để nhận xét về vị trí của các trạng từ chỉ tần suất khi đứng trong câu.

Adele's mornings usually start fairly late.

Adele doesn't very often get up early.

Structure Practice 3.1

Hãy viết lại các câu, trong đó nói rõ các sự việc diễn ra ở mức độ thường xuyên như thế nào. Cần nhớ rằng bạn đặt các trạng từ chỉ tần suất trước động từ chính (nhưng sau “don't/ doesn't”).

1. Rufus brings Adele a cup of tea in bed. (*usually*)
.....

2. Adele does housework on Saturday. (*sometimes*)
.....

3. Adele takes the dog for a walk. (*often*)
.....

4. Adele reads the newspapers at some time during the weekend. (*always*)
.....

5. Adele visits her elderly mother in Newbury. (*quite often*)
.....

6. They have breakfast. (*not usually*)
.....

7. They have Saturday lunch. (*not often*)
.....

8. They have a heavy meal in the evening. (*hardly ever*)
.....

9. Rufus does the crossword puzzle in the Saturday newspaper. (*normally*)
.....

-
10. Rufus lies in on Sunday morning. (*almost always*)
.....

Structure Practice 3.2

Trả lời các câu hỏi sau. Hãy sử dụng các cấu trúc trong phần đóng khung.

I sometimes/ often/ usually go dancing on Saturdays.

I play tennis once/ twice/ three times a week.

I go to the hairdresser every ten days/ every week.

1. How often do you lie in bed after waking up?
.....

2. What do you usually have for breakfast?
.....

3. How often do you talk to yourself?
.....

4. How often do you daydream at work or school?
.....

5. How often do you have arguments with other people in your head?
.....

6. Are you usually more awake in the morning or in the evening?
.....

7. How often do you sing in the bath or shower?
.....

8. How often do you cook for yourself?
.....

9. How often do you go shopping?
.....

10. How often do you look in a mirror?
.....

Structure 4: Comparison of adjectives (So sánh các tính từ)

ở quyển 1 bạn đã học về cách cấu tạo dạng so sánh hơn và so sánh tuyệt đối. Bạn hãy nhìn vào các ví dụ và nhớ lại cách cấu tạo.

old o	older /oldest	cheap o	cheaper/ cheapest
fat o	fatter/ fattest	happy o	happier/ happiest
interesting o more interesting/ most interesting			
good o	better/best	bad o	worse/ worst
		far o	further/ furthest

Structure Practice 4.1

Hoàn thành các câu. Mỗi câu sử dụng dạng so sánh hơn của một trong những tính từ sau.

crowded early	expensive	interested	near
quiet	easy	serious	thin

1. This jacket is too small. I need a size.
2. You look Have you lost weight?
3. He's not so keen on his studies. He's in having a good time.
4. You're making too much noise. Can you be a bit?
5. There were a lot of people on the bus. It was than usual.
6. You're late. I expected you to be here
7. The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be much
8. It's a pity you live so far away. I wish you lived
9. The examination was than we expected.
10. Her illness was than we at first thought.

Structure Practice 4.2

Hoàn thành các câu sau trong đó có sử dụng dạng so sánh tuyệt đối cùng với giới từ.

Ví dụ: It's a very nice room. It's the nicest room in the hotel.

1. It's a very cheap restaurant. It's the town.
2. It was a very happy day. It was my life.
3. She's a very intelligent student. She the school.
4. It's a very valuable painting. It the gallery.

Trong các câu sau, hãy sử dụng "one of the + superlative + N" cùng với giới từ.

Ví dụ: It's a very nice room. It's one of the nicest rooms in the hotel.

5. He's a very rich man. He's one the world.

-
6. It's a very old castle. It's Britain.
 7. He's a very good player. He the team.
 8. It was a very bad experience. It was my life.
 9. He's a very dangerous criminal. He the country.

Structure 5: Get + comparative (to express changes)

Khi sử dụng cấu trúc so sánh, bạn cũng có thể sử dụng cấu trúc "get + comparative" để diễn tả sự thay đổi (change).

Khi dùng cấu trúc này, bạn chia động từ "get" ở thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn (Present Continuous Tense).

Note 2

Như bạn đã học ở quyển 1, thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn có cách chia như sau: be + V-ing.

work o working	take o taking	sit o sitting	lie o	o
lying				

Thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn dùng để diễn tả:

- Những sự việc đang xảy ra

What are you doing?

We are learning English.

- Những sự việc đang thay đổi

The world's climate is getting warmer.

- Các kế hoạch trong tương lai

I'm not working next Saturday.

Structure Practice 5.1

Hoàn thành câu, mỗi câu sử dụng một trong các từ và cụm từ trong phần đóng khung.

are getting	are going	army	average	changing	fast
height	is getting	price	is happening	problem	slowly
unemployed	worse				

1. The of petrol is going up again.
2. Three years ago there were two million people without jobs. Now there are over three million
3. The housing problem is getting
4. Food prices up.
5. Things are changing very these days.

6. Restaurants more and more expensive.
7. In 1981, the cost of a good meal for two, with wine, was £ 25.
8. There are 300,000 men in the
9. What ? I can't see.

Structure Practice 5.2

Đặt câu với "getting" hay "going".

1. the price of drinking water/up *Why is the price of drinking water going up?*

2. inflation/ down

..... ?

3. my mother's cold/ better

..... ?

4. the number of university students/ down

..... ?

5. my sister's husband/ better

..... ?

6. the baby's weight/ up

..... ?

7. Sunday newspapers/ more expensive

..... ?

8. the number of road accidents/ down

..... ?

9. the price of air tickets/ up

..... ?

10. the Atlantic Ocean/ dirtier

..... ?

Structure 6: Simple Past Tense (Thì quá khứ đơn)

Như bạn đã học ở quyển 1, các động từ chia ở thì quá khứ đơn như sau:

- Phần lớn các động từ được chia: V + ed

listen o listened hate o hated stop o stopped study o studied

- Trừ một số động từ bất quy tắc

go o went

break o broke

buy o bought

be o was/were

Thì quá khứ đơn dùng để diễn tả những sự việc đã xảy ra, thường đi với những từ "yesterday, ago, last week/ month/ year, then, when...."

I saw "Carmen" three years ago.

Structure Practice 6.1

Hãy chuyển các câu sau sang thì quá khứ đơn.

Ví dụ: Tom usually gets up at 7.30. Yesterday he got up at 7.30.

1. Tom usually wakes up early. Yesterday morning
2. Tom usually walks to work. Yesterday
3. Tom is usually late for work. Yesterday
4. Tom usually has a sandwich for lunch. Yesterday
5. Tom usually goes out in the evening. Yesterday evening
6. Tom usually sleeps very well. Last night

Structure Practice 6.2

Hoàn thành các câu với các động từ sau.

hurt teach spend sell throw fall catch buy cost

1. Tom's father him how to drive when he was 17.
2. Don down the stairs this morning and his leg.
3. We need some money so we our car.
4. Ann a lot of money yesterday. She a dress which £50.
5. Jim the ball to Sue who it.

Structure 7: Connecting expressions in conversation

Hãy điền mỗi từ hoặc cụm từ dưới đây vào một chỗ trống thích hợp. (Mỗi một vị trí có thể có hơn một cách trả lời).

John: actually, even, I don't know, just, look

Mary: I do think, I don't know, perhaps, so what, still, though

John: (1) , Mary, the problem is, we're (2) too different.

Mary: OK, we're different.(3)? People are different.

Unit 1. Who's who?

John: Well, we don't have the same interests. We don't(4) like the same people.

Mary:(5) not.(6), we get on very well together most of the time.

John:(7), Mary, I don't think we do.

Mary: Well, OK, John, maybe there are some problems. But(8) we should go on trying for a bit longer.

John:(9), Mary. Do you think we're getting anywhere?

Mary:(10) either. Let's have one more try,(11).

John: OK. One more try.

Pronunciation

Hãy đọc các từ sau.

- | | | | | |
|-----------|---------|---------|-------|-------|
| 1. fish | chicken | million | big | |
| 2. price | time | rising | night | right |
| 3. thirty | first | shirt | | |

Hãy xem các từ sau phát âm như thế nào? Chúng thuộc nhóm 1, 2 hay 3?

- | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|----------|
| a. girl | b. size | c. arriving | d. tights | e. white |
| f. thirsty | g. light | h. with | i. fin | j. bird |
| k. stir | l. bright | m. slight | n. excite | o. ride |
| p. fifty | | | | |

1C. LISTENING

Hãy nghe (Unit 1. Listening) và trả lời các câu hỏi.

First recording

1. What is the man's name?
2. Which is his picture?
3. Who is the woman?

Second recording

4. Who is the first speaker?
5. Who is the other speaker?
6. Who are they talking about?
7. Which is his picture?



Third recording

8. Who is speaking?
9. Which is her picture?
10. Which is Sally's picture?

Fourth recording

11. Who is the first speaker?

1D. READING

Hãy đọc đoạn văn sau rồi trả lời các câu hỏi.

I am a family doctor and I've got about two thousand patients. A lot of my patients are never ill, so I never see them. But I've got a lot of old patients, and they often have problems. They sometimes come to see me two or three times a week. Then there are the mothers with young children. They often bring their children to see me. I've got a very good secretary, but I'm always very busy.

1. Is the doctor a busy man?

.....

2. How many patients has he got?

.....

3. Who have a lot of problems ?

.....

4. Has he got a secretary ?

.....

5. Do mothers never bring their children to see the doctor ?

.....

SUMMARY

Tới lúc này bạn đã học tất cả những nội dung ghi trong phần Tóm tắt dưới đây. Nếu chưa nắm vững phần nào, bạn hãy đọc lại phần đó và làm các bài tập cho đến khi bạn đạt được các mục đích của bài học.

Trong Unit 1 bạn đã luyện những vấn đề sau:

- Chào hỏi, giới thiệu thông tin cá nhân và giới thiệu mọi người với nhau.

May I introduce myself?

Tony, I'd like to introduce my friend Mary Parker.

- Mô tả diện mạo của người.

You're too old.

My eyes are a bit small.

- Sử dụng thì hiện tại đơn.

The weather usually gets warmer in April.

- Sử dụng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn.

What are you doing?

We are learning English.

- Sử dụng thì quá khứ đơn.

I changed my job last week.

- Sử dụng các frequency adverbs và adverbials.

Adele's mornings usually start fairly late.

Adele doesn't very often get up early.

- So sánh tính từ ở cấp độ hơn và tuyệt đối.

His car is cheaper than mine.

Hanoi is the most beautiful city that I know.

- Sử dụng câu trúc diễn tả sự thay đổi.

The world's climate is getting warmer.

- Sử dụng một số các cụm từ để nói ý trong hội thoại.

- Phân biệt cách phát âm của "i".

SELF-TEST

Thời gian tối đa để hoàn thành bài tự kiểm tra này là 100 phút. Điểm số dành cho mỗi câu hỏi được ghi trong ngoặc ở đầu mỗi câu hỏi. Nếu trả lời đúng tất cả các câu hỏi bạn có thể chuyển sang học tiếp Unit 2.

Chú ý: Bạn cần tự trả lời tất cả các câu hỏi trước khi xem “Key to Self-test”.

I. Fill in the gaps in the conversations. (20 points)

a. Tom: Jake,(1) like to(2) my friend Alice.

Alice: How(3)?

Jake: How(4)?

b. Ann: Andy,(5) is Louise.

Andy: Hello, Louise. I'm(6) to(7) you.

c. Joe: Hello, Phil. How(8)?

Phil: Fine,(9), Joe.(10) to see you again.

d. Cathy: Janet,(11) Susan?

Janet: No. How do you do? I've heard(12) much(13) you.

e. Judy:(14) I introduce(15)? My(16) Judy Gower.

Ruth: Hello. I'm Ruth Collins. I'm sorry, I didn't(17) your name.

f. Kate: Where are you from?

Mark: Canada.

Kate:(18) in Canada?

Mark: Toronto.

g. Steve:(19) me. Are you Liz Bush?

Liz: Yes, that's(20).

II. Rewrite the sentences, adding the frequency adverbs. (20 points)

1. I get up quite early on Saturdays. (usually)

.....

2. My son goes to school on Saturday morning. (normally)

.....

3. My daughter goes to a gym club. (quite often)

.....

4. After gym club, we go to the bakery for fresh cakes. (almost always)

.....

5. In the afternoon, father takes them somewhere like a museum or a zoo. (often)

.....

6. We try to go away and visit friends. (once a month)

.....

7. On Saturdays, I get up before ten. (hardly ever)

.....

8. I go to church, but my husband does. (never; sometimes)

.....

9. We have guests for Sunday lunch. (quite often)

.....

10. We visit my father and mother. (every week)

.....

III. Put in the correct verb forms. (20 points)

1. Look! It again. (rain)

2. It always when I want to go for a walk. (rain)

3. "What you?" " I a letter." (do; write)

4. "What you?" "I'm a telecommunications engineer." (do)

5. " you fish?" " Not very much." (like)

6. "Have you got a cigarette?" "Sorry, I" (not smoke)

7. "What time youup?" "At seven o'clock, usually." (get)

8. "Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?" "Sorry, I with Bill." (play)

9. I most Saturday mornings. (work)

10. "Is your father here?" "No, he" (shop)

IV. This is a part of a conversation between a policeman and a young woman. Fill in the gaps. The words in the box will help you. (40 points)

arrive	do	go	make	see
stop	take	telephone	travel	watch

Policeman: What time(1) work yesterday?

Woman: I don't know. About half past five.

Pol: And where(2) after that?

Wom: I went straight home.

Pol: I see. How(3) home? By bus?

Wom: Yes.

Pol: What bus(4) ?

Wom: I don't remember.

- Pol: All right. What time(5) home?
- Wom: Oh, around six, I suppose.
- Pol:(6) anybody you knew on the way?
- Wom: I don't think so. I don't remember.
- Pol: What(7) when you got home?
- Wom: Made a cup of tea and put the TV on.
- Pol: Oh, yes. What programme(8)?
- Wom: "Front page".
- Pol: "Front page" wasn't on last night.
- Wom: I've got it recorded on video.
- Pol: I see.(9) any phone calls?
- Wom: Pardon?
- Pol:(10) anybody?
- Wom: I might have done. I don't remember.

KEY TO STRUCTURE EXERCISES

Structure Practice 1

1. hair 2. eyes 3. big 4. short 5. handsome 6. glasses

Structure Practice 2

1. makes
2. doesn't eat; make
3. don't smoke
4. does (Mark) go
5. Do (your parents) like
6. do (you) go
7. does (your sister) work
8. doesn't (usually) have
9. does
10. don't go
11. worries
12. watches

Structure Practice 3.1

1. Rufus usually brings Adele a cup of tea in bed.

2. Adele sometimes does housework on Saturday.
3. Adele often takes the dog for a walk.
4. Adele always reads the newspapers at some time during the weekend.
5. Adele quite often visits her elderly mother in Newbury.
6. They don't usually have breakfast.
7. They don't often have Saturday lunch.
8. They hardly ever have a heavy meal in the evening.
9. Rufus normally does the crossword puzzle in the Saturday newspaper.
10. Rufus almost always lies in on Sunday morning.

Structure Practice 4.1

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. larger | 2. thinner |
| 3. more interested | 4. quieter (more quiet) |
| 5. more crowded | 6. earlier |
| 7. more expensive | 8. nearer |
| 9. easier | 10. more serious |

Structure Practice 4.2

1. It's the cheapest restaurant in the town.
2. It was the happiest day of my life.
3. She is the most intelligent student in the school.
4. It is the most valuable painting in the gallery.
5. He's one of the richest men in the world.
6. It's one of the oldest castles in Britain.
7. He is one of the best players in the team.
8. It was one of the worst experiences of my life/ in my life.
9. He is one of the most dangerous criminals in the country.

Structure Practice 5.1

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. price | 2. unemployed | 3. worse |
| 4. are going | 5. fast/ slowly | 6. are getting |
| 7. average | 8. army | 9. is happening |

Structure Practice 5.2

2. How fast is inflation going down?
3. Is your mother's cold getting better?
4. Why is the number of university students going down?

5. Is your sister's husband getting better?
6. How fast is the baby's weight going up?
7. Are the Sunday newspapers getting more expensive?
8. Is the number of road accidents going down?
9. Why is the price of air tickets going up?
10. Is the Atlantic Ocean getting dirtier?

Structure Practice 6.1

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. he woke up early. | 2. he walked to work. |
| 3. he was late for work. | 4. he had a sandwich for lunch. |
| 5. he went out. | 6. he slept very well. |

Structure Practice 6.2

- | | |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. taught | 4. spent ... bought ... cost |
| 2. fell ... hurt | 5. threw ... caught |
| 3. sold | |

Structure Practice 7

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Look (<i>or</i> Actually) | 7. Actually (<i>or</i> Look <i>or</i> I don't know) |
| 2. just | 8. I do think (<i>or</i> perhaps) |
| 3. So what | 9. I don't know |
| 4. even | 10. I don't know |
| 5. Perhaps | 11. though |
| 6. Still (<i>or</i> I don't know) | |

KEY TO PRONUNCIATION

1. /i/: h/ i/ p 2. /ai/: b/ c/ d/ e/ g/ l/ m/ n/ o 3. /ɛ/: a/ f/ j/ k/

KEY TO LISTENING

Tapescript

1. Sally: Look, Jake, you're just too old for me.
Jake: No, I'm not.
Sally: Yes, you are. You're 20 years older than me.
Jake: Well, yes, OK, but so what? Age isn't important, Sally.

Unit 1. Who's who?

Sally: Yes, it is, Jake. You're boring. You can't dance, you don't like my friends, you've got no sense of humour, and you haven't got any hair. All you can do is talk about yourself and read books and listen to music. You haven't even got any money.

Jake: Well, yes, I know, but money isn't everything.

2. Sally: What's he like, then, Polly?

Polly: Who, Rob? Well, you know, he's very good-looking.

Sally: What, tall, dark and handsome?

Polly: Well, not as tall as your Jake. But he's dark and handsome all right. He's got lovely brown eyes and a super smile. And he's got a great sense of humour. And he can dance all night. And he thinks I'm great.

Sally: I must say you're lucky. I can't say the same about Jake. Rob's older than you, isn't he?

Polly: No, actually, he isn't. We're the same age. Both 21 next summer.

3. Polly: Perhaps my nose is too big. Do you think it is? No, perhaps not. I don't know. On the other hand, my hair's nice. Rob says he likes long fair hair. He's sweet. My eyes are a bit small, though. Still, they're pretty. And I know I've got really nice teeth. Look at that smile. I do think my nose is too big, though. Well, perhaps not. I don't know.

4. Jake: I don't know what the problem is. I'm good-looking, I'm very intelligent, though I say it myself, I'm an interesting person, I've got a lot of experience of the world, I've got a good job, I can speak three languages. Why isn't she happy?

Rob: Well, perhaps you're too perfect. You're just too good for her.

Jake: Yes, maybe you're right, Rob. Perhaps that's it.

1. Jake 2. B 3. Sally

4. Sally 5. Polly 6. Rob

8. Polly 9. C

10. E (If Polly is C, Sally must be A or E, but she's 20 years younger than Jake).

11. Jake

KEY TO READING

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Yes, he is. | 2. Two thousand patients. |
| 3. Some of the old people | 4. Yes, he has got a good secretary. |
| 5. No, they often bring their children to see me. | |

KEY TO SELF-TEST

I.

- | | | |
|--------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. I'd | 2. introduce | 3. do you do |
|--------|--------------|--------------|

Unit 1. Who's who?

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 4. do you do | 5. this | 6. glad |
| 7. meet | 8. are | 9. thanks |
| 10. Nice | 11. do you know | 12. so |
| 13. about | 14. May | 15. myself |
| 16. name's | 17. catch | 18. Whereabouts |
| 19. Excuse | 20. right | |

II.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. I usually get up... | 2. My son normally goes to school... |
| 3. My daughter quite often goes... | 4. ...we almost always go... |
| 5. ...the children's father often takes... | 6. We try to go away once a month |
| 7. I hardly ever get up... | 8. I never go... my husband sometimes... |
| 9. We quite often have... | 10. We visit... mother every week |

III.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. is raining. | 2. rains |
| 3. are you doing ... am writing | 4. do you do |
| 5. Do you like | 6. don't smoke |
| 7. do you get | 8. 'm playing |
| 9. work | 10. 's shopping |

IV.

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. did you stop | 2. did you go |
| 3. did you travel | 4. did you take |
| 5. did you arrive | 6. Did you see |
| 7. did you do | 8. did you watch |
| 9. Did you make | 10. did you telephone |

VOCABULARY

Bạn nên tham khảo bảng từ vựng thường xuyên trong quá trình học, không chỉ riêng bài này mà tất cả các bài khác để t_ ng vốn từ vựng tiếng Anh.

argument [ˈɑ:gjʊmənt]	n sự tranh luận, sự cãi nhau
average [ˈævəridʒ]	n số trung bình, loại, mức trung bình
canoe [kə'nu:]	n xuồng
criminal [krɪ'mɪnl]	n kẻ sát nhân, kẻ giết người
daydream [deɪdri:m]	v,n mơ màng

Unit 1. Who's who?

desert [dɛzət]	n sa mạc
seed [si:d]	n hạt
great sense of humour	expr biết đùa, có khiếu hài hước
indoors [in'do:z]	adv ở trong nhà
increase [ɪn'kri:s]	v tăng lên
knit [nit]	v đan, dệt
lens [lenz]	n thấu kính, ống kính (máy ảnh)
object ['Obdēikt]	n đồ vật, vật thể
outdoors [aut'do:z]	adv ở ngoài trời
palm [pł:m]	n cây cọ
parrot ['pærət]	n con vẹt
roof [ru:f]	n mái nhà
shelter ['œeltʃət]	n căn lều
snake [sneik]	n con rắn
take pictures	v chụp ảnh
tree branch [brɪl:nətə]	n cành cây
wild pig [pig]	n lợn rừng

UNIT 2. I'M AFRAID I'VE HAD AN ACCIDENT

INTRODUCTION

Bây giờ bạn bắt đầu học bài 2. Trong bài này, bạn sẽ ôn cách đặt câu sử dụng thì hiện tại hoàn thành.

Bạn cũng sẽ luyện cấu trúc "How long..." - cách hỏi và cách trả lời. Khi thực hành trả lời cấu trúc "How long..." bạn sẽ luyện phân biệt cách sử dụng của "for" và "since".

Ngoài ra bạn còn học thêm cấu trúc "going to..." khi nói về tương lai.

Bây giờ bạn hãy xem phần Mục đích của bài 2.

UNIT OBJECTIVES

Phần "Mục đích bài học" giúp bạn biết cụ thể những gì mà bạn sẽ học trong bài.

Học xong Bài 2 bạn đã ôn luyện:

1. Chia động từ ở thì Hiện tại hoàn thành
2. Cách dùng của thì Hiện tại hoàn thành.
3. Đặt câu hỏi với câu hỏi "How long..." và trả lời.
4. Phân biệt cách dùng của "for" và "since".
5. Cách dùng của cấu trúc "going to...".

2A. DIALOGUE

Bạn hãy nghe bài hội thoại (Unit 2. Dialogue) rồi trả lời các câu hỏi.

George: Mrs Scott ...

Mrs Scott: Yes?

George: I'm afraid I've had an accident.

Mrs Scott: Oh dear! What's happened?

George: I've spilt my coffee.

Mrs Scott: Never mind. Here's a cloth.

1. Who do you think Mrs Scott is?
.....

2. What happened to George?

.....
3. What has Mrs Scott given him?

.....
4. Does Mrs Scott feel angry?

Khi đã trả lái xong các câu hỏi, bạn hãy chuyển sang phần Câu trúc.

2B. STRUCTURE

Structure 1. Present Perfect Tense (Thì Hiện tại hoàn thành)

Bạn đã được giới thiệu về thì Hiện tại hoàn thành trong quyển Tiếng Anh 1. Trước khi làm các phần luyện trong bài này, bạn hãy ôn lại cấu trúc của thì Hiện tại hoàn thành, các ý nghĩa chính của thì và dạng quá khứ phân từ của các động từ bất quy tắc.

1. Cách thành lập:

Have/ Has	+	PII
-----------	---	-----

Phân từ quá khứ (PII: Past Participle) của động từ quy tắc tận cùng bằng "-ed".

Ví dụ: opened, decided, started

Phân từ quá khứ của các động từ bất quy tắc không theo nguyên tắc đó.

Ví dụ: lost, written, done

2. Ý nghĩa:

Thì Hiện tại hoàn thành có các ý nghĩa sau:

* Chỉ ra một sự liên hệ với hiện tại.

Jim has gone to Canada. (= He is in Canada or on his way there now.)

* Thông báo tin tức mới hoặc một việc vừa mới xảy ra.

Do you know about Jim? He's gone to Canada.

* Nói về một khoảng thời gian kéo dài đến hiện tại.

We've met a lot of interesting people in the last few days.

Note 1: Thì Hiện tại hoàn thành thường đi với "ever, never, before, since, just, already, yet, this morning/week/month/year..." (khoảng thời gian chưa hết vào thời điểm nói).

Have you seen "Hamlet" before?

I haven't eaten anything since yesterday morning.

Note 2: Lưu ý phân biệt ý nghĩa thì Hiện tại hoàn thành (nói về sự việc có liên hệ với hiện tại) và thì Quá khứ đơn (chỉ nói về sự việc đã xảy ra trong quá khứ).

Shakespeare **wrote** many plays.

My sister is a writer. She **has written** many books. (She still writes books.)

Structure Practice 1.1

Bạn nói gì trong những tình huống sau?

Example: You are in a big shop. You want to buy something, but you have forgotten your banker's card. You say:

Good morning. I wonder if you can help me. I've forgotten my banker's card.

1. You are speaking to the post clerk. You have lost your mobile phone.
.....

2. You left some shoes for repair. You are in the shop. You have forgotten your receipt.
.....

3. You are speaking to the doorman at a big hotel. You were invited to the reception, but you have forgotten your invitation.
.....

4. You are in the optician's. You have broken your glasses.
.....

5. You are in the library. You want a book. You have lost your ticket.
.....

6. You are talking to the doorman at the cinema. You have just come out. You have left your handbag inside.
.....

Structure Practice 1.2

Hãy xem ví dụ sau:

A: I've lost my passport.

B: reported/ to the police? → Have you reported it to the police?

Hãy đặt câu tương tự với các tình huống dưới đây:

1. A: I've lost my key.

B: looked/ all your pockets?

2. A: I've broken a tooth.

B: seen/ dentist?

3. A: I've lost my city phone.
B: reported/ post office?.....
4. A: I haven't found that purse I lost.
B: asked/ the police station?.....
5. A: I've forgotten to get any milk.
B: looked/ refrigerator?.....
6. A: I've hurt my knee.
B: been/ doctor?.....
7. A: I've forgotten Bob's telephone number.
B: looked/ telephone directory?.....
8. A: I've had a headache all day.
B: taken/ aspirin?

Structure 2: How long have you (been)...?

Bạn hãy xem ví dụ sau:

Bob and Alice are married. They got married exactly 20 years ago, so today is their 20th wedding anniversary.

They **have been** married **for 20 years**.

Chúng ta nói:

How long have they been married? (not "How long are they married?")

They have been married for 20 years. (not "They are married for 20 years")

Như vậy ta dùng câu hỏi "How long..." để hỏi một sự việc đã tồn tại, xảy ra được bao lâu.

How long have you been married?

How long have you lived in this city?

Structure Practice 2.1

Đọc các tình huống và viết câu hỏi dựa vào những từ trong ngoặc.

1. John tells you that his mother is in hospital. You ask him:

(how long/ be/ in hospital?) *How long has your mother been in hospital?*

2. You meet a woman who tells you that she teaches English. You ask her:

(how long/ teach English?)

3. You know that Jane is a good friend of Carol's. You ask Jane:

(how long/ know/ Carol?)

4. Your friend's brother went to Australia some time ago and he's still there. You ask your friend:

(how long/ be/ in Australia?)

5. Tim always wears the same jacket. It's a very old jacket. You ask him:

(how long/ have/ that jacket?)

6. You are talking to a friend about Alan. Alan now works at an informatics company. You ask your friend:

(how long/ work/ at the informatics company?)

7. A friend of yours is having driving lessons. You ask him:

(how long/ have/ driving lessons?)

8. You meet somebody on a train. She tells you that she lives in Glasgow. You ask her:

(how long/ live/ in Glasgow?)

Structure Practice 2.2

Trả lời các câu hỏi sau, dùng thông tin thực về chính bản thân bạn.

1. How long have you lived in this town/ city?

.....

2. How long have you been in this course?

.....

3. How long have you been learning English?

.....

4. How long have you known your best friend?

.....

5. How long haven't you written letters to your friends?

.....

6. How long haven't you read books?

.....

7. How long haven't you seen your doctor?

.....

8. How long haven't you eaten fish?

.....

Structure 3: "Since" and "For"

Hãy xem 2 ví dụ sau:

How long have Tom and Ann known each other?

They've known each other since they were at school.

They've known each other for a long time.

Chúng ta dùng cả "since" và "for" để nói một sự việc đã xảy ra được bao lâu.

I've waited for you since 8 o'clock.

I've waited for you for 2 hours.

Chúng ta dùng "since" khi nói đến thái điểm bắt đầu của một khoảng thời gian (8 giờ),
dùng "for" khi nói đến một khoảng thời gian (2 tiếng đồng hồ).

Since 8 o'clock ←----- for 2 hours -----o 10 o'clock

π

(khoảng thời gian)

(bây giờ)

(thời gian bắt đầu của khoảng thời gian)

Structure Practice 3.1

since yesterday = for 24 hours

for 400 years = since the 16th century

since last Tuesday = for

since last = for five days

since 1977 = for

..... I was born = all my life

..... = since my birthday

since nine o'clock =

since last July =

for ten years =

Structure Practice 3.2

Điền "for" hay "since"?

1. He's been ill last week.

2. Tom's father has been the director of the company 10 years.

3. Have you been here a long time?

4. Sarah has lived in London 1985.

5. Christmas, the weather has been quite good.

6. There hasn't been any news from him months.
7. The house is very dirty. We haven't cleaned it ages.
8. I haven't had a good meal last Tuesday.

Structure 4: going to...

* Chúng ta dùng "going to..." khi nói về một việc mà chúng ta đã quyết định sẽ làm hay một việc chúng ta dự định sẽ làm trong tương lai.

There's a film on television tonight. Are you going to watch it?

No, I'm too tired. I'm going to have an early night.

* Chúng ta dùng "going to..." khi nói về một việc mà ai đó sắp xếp để thực hiện (tương tự như dùng thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn)

What time are you going to meet Ann? = What time are you meeting Ann?

I'm going to travel to Scotland on Monday. = I'm traveling to Scotland on Monday.

* Các bạn cần phân biệt được sự khác nhau giữa "will" và "going to": cả hai đều được dùng để nói về những hành động tương lai, nhưng có sự khác biệt rõ ràng.

- "will" được dùng khi chúng ta quyết định làm điều gì đó ngay vào lúc nói. Trước đó người nói chưa quyết định làm.

Ví dụ: Sue: Let's have a party.

Helen: That's a great idea. We'll invite lots of people.

(The party is a new idea.)

decision now

_____ x (I'll...) _____

past now future

- "going to" được dùng khi chúng ta đã quyết định trước đó làm điều gì.

Ví dụ: Later that day, Helen meets Dave:

"Sue and I have decided to have a party. We're going to invite lots of people."

o Helen *had already decided to* invite lots of people *before* she spoke to Dave.

decision before

_____ x _____ x (I'm going to...) _____

past now future

- Tuy nhiên đôi lúc không có sự khác biệt nhiều giữa "will" và "going to". Bạn có thể nói:

I think the weather will be nice later.

I think the weather is going to be nice later.

Khi chúng ta nói "something is going to happen", chúng ta biết (hoặc nghĩ) như vậy nhờ vào tình huống hiện tại.

Look at those black clouds. **It's going to rain.**

I feel terrible. I think **I'm going to be sick.**

Trong những tình huống khác, tốt hơn nên dùng "will".

Tom **will** probably **arrive** at about 8 o'clock.

I think Ann **will like** the present we bought for her.

Structure Practice 4.1

Hoàn thành các câu trong đó sử dụng "will" ('ll) hoặc "going to".

1. A: Why are you turning on the television?

B: **I'm going to watch** the news. (I/ watch)

2. A: Oh, I've just realised. I haven't got any money.

B: Haven't you? Well, don't worry. you some. (I/ lend)

3. A: I've got a headache.

B: Have you? Wait there and an aspirin for you. (I/ get)

4. A: Why are you filling that bucket with water?

B: the car. (I/ wash)

5. A: I've decided to repaint this room.

B: Oh, have you? What colour it? (you/ paint)

6. A: Where are you going? Are you going shopping?

B: Yes, something for dinner. (I/ buy)

7. A: I don't know how to use this camera.

B: It's quite easy. you. (I/ show)

8. A: What would you like to eat?

B: a sandwich, please. (I/ have)

9. A: Did you post that letter for me?

B: Oh, I'm sorry. I completely forgot. it now. (I/ do)

10. A: The ceiling in this room doesn't look very safe, does it?

B: No, it looks as if down. (it/ fall)

11. A: Has George decided what to do when he leaves school?

B: Oh, yes. Everything is planned. a holiday for a few weeks and then a computer programming course. (he/ have; he/do)

Structure Practice 4.2

Đặt câu trong đó sử dụng "going to" hoặc "not going to".

Ví dụ: John could watch the news or he could watch a comedy programme on TV.

He is going to watch the comedy programme, so....

o he's not going to watch the news.

1. Peter could buy the green pullover or he could buy the blue pullover. He's going to buy the green pullover, so

2. There are two good films on. Tom and Alice could see "The Orient Express" or they could see "The Italian job". They're going to see "The Orient Express", so

3. Paul and Belinda are looking at the menu in a restaurant. They could have roast beef or they could have roast lamb. They decide they're not going to have roast lamb, so

4. Brigitte wants to go to Edinburgh. She could travel by air or she could travel by train. She's going to travel by air, so

5. The famous jockey could ride Saratoga Skiddy or he could ride Winter Fair in the big race. He's not going to ride Winter Fair, so

.....

Pronunciation

Hãy đọc các từ và cụm từ sau.

1. first	first of all	third	thirsty thirty
2. certain	certainly		
3. Thursday	on Thursday	burn	
4. world	round	the world word	work
5. learn	early	heard	

Bạn hãy viết một số từ có phát âm nguyên âm [Ω:].

2C. LISTENING

1. Hãy nghe đoạn hội thoại (Unit 2. Listening). Một nhân vật trong hội thoại sẽ nghỉ làm một năm. Anh ta dự định sẽ làm những gì trong số những việc sau?

a. take a big rest

b. listen to the radio

c. watch videos

d. study biology

e. walk right across Ireland

f. write a novel

g. play some rugby

h. travel round the world

i. learn karate

j. get married

2. Hãy nghe lại. Bạn có thể viết tất cả những việc mà anh ta dự định sẽ làm không?

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

2D. READING

Đọc đoạn văn sau và trả lời câu hỏi

14 London Road

Croydon

Surrey

15th June

Dear Lucille,

I have just received your postcard. What can I say? I'm so sorry. It's there in my diary as clear as anything "Saturday 10th June. Staying the weekend with Tom and Lucille. Oxford."

I'm afraid I really have an excuse. I was very busy last week and I was pretty tired when I got home on Friday night. I woke late than usual on Saturday morning and I meant to check my diary, but I forgot.

I really am terribly sorry. Please forgive me.

Love from

Julie

1. Who wrote the letter?

.....

2. Why must the writer apologise?

.....

3. Ask where Tom and Lucille live.

.....

4. Answer the question.

.....

5. How did Julie feel on Friday night?

.....

6. Ask if she checked her diary on Saturday morning.

.....

7. Answer the question.

.....

SUMMARY

Tới lúc này bạn đã học tất cả những nội dung ghi trong phần Tóm tắt dưới đây. Nếu chưa nắm vững phần nào, bạn hãy đọc lại phần đó và làm các bài tập cho đến khi đạt được các mục đích của bài học.

Trong Unit 2 bạn đã luyện những vấn đề sau:

1. Chia động từ ở thì Hiện tại hoàn thành.

He has lost his key.

2. Cách dùng của thì Hiện tại hoàn thành.

My sister is a writer. She has written many books.

I haven't seen George recently. Have you?

We've met a lot of interesting people in the last few days.

3. Đặt câu hỏi "How long..." và trả lời.

How long have they been married?

They have been married for 20 years.

4. Phân biệt "for" và "since"

They've known each other since they were at school.

They've known each other for a long time.

5. Sử dụng cấu trúc "going to...".

There's a film on television tonight. Are you going to watch it?

No, I'm too tired. I'm going to have an early night.

What time are you going to meet Ann?

6. Phân biệt "will" và "going to".

Sue: Let's have a party.

Helen: That's a great idea. We'll invite lots of people.

Helen: We have decided to have a party. We're going to invite lots of people.

SELF-TEST

Thời gian tối đa để hoàn thành bài tự kiểm tra này là 120 phút. Điểm số dành cho mỗi câu hỏi được ghi trong ngoặc ở đầu mỗi câu hỏi. Nếu trả lời đúng tất cả các câu hỏi bạn có thể chuyển sang học tiếp Unit 3.

Chú ý: Bạn cần tự trả lái tất cả các câu hỏi trước khi xem “Key to Self-test”.

I. Write questions with "how long" and "when". (10 points)

1. It's raining.

(how long?) ... How long has it rained?

(when?) ... When did it start raining?

2. Kate is learning Italian.

(how long/ learn?)

(when/start/learn?)

3. I know Martin.

(how long/know?)

(when/first/meet?)

4. Bob and Alice are married.

(how long?)

(when?)

5. I live in Ha Noi.

(how long?)

(when?)

II. Present Perfect or Simple Past? (20 points)

1. this book before? (*Have you read/ Did you read*)

2. Yes, I it last year. (*have read/ read*)

3. "Do you know where Alice is?" "She's at home. I her yesterday." (*have seen/ saw*)

4. to Alaska? (*Have you ever been/ Did you ever go*)

5. I to eight different schools when I was a child. (*have been /went*)

6. "Do you like Chaplin?" "Actually, I any of his films." (*have never seen/ never saw*)

7. Ann to a lot of parties this year. (*has been/ went*)

8. Joe his car three times since Christmas. (*has crashed/ crashed*)

9. The weather terrible last summer. (*has been/ was*)

10. This summer nice and warm. (*has been/was*)

III. Which is correct - a, b or both a and b? (20 points)

1. this film before?

- a. Have you seen b. Did you see

2. to Australia?

- a. Have you ever been b. Did you ever go

3. I the doctor yesterday.

- a. have seen b. saw

4. I a lot of tennis this year.

- a. have played b. played

5. We've lived in this house 50 years.

- a. since b. for

6. Could you me where the station is?

- a. tell b. say

7. I always what I think.

- a. tell b. say

8. everything all right?

- a. Is b. Are

9. Could you me some sugar?

- a. borrow b. lend

10. Would you like dinner with me?

- a. to have b. have

IV. Read the dialogue then answer the questions. (10 points)

Angela: How did you get on in your exam?

Bob: I failed.

Angela: Oh, I am sorry. What are you going to do now?

Bob: I'm going to take it again, of course.

Angela: When are you going to take it?

Bob: I'm definitely not going to take it until next year.

1. Who took the exam?

.....
2. Ask if he passed?

.....
3. Answer the question.

.....
4. What is he going to take?

.....
5. Ask if he's going to take the exam again this year.

V. What are these people going to do? (10 points)

1. John and Alice are wearing tennis clothes and they have their tennis rackets.
.....

2. Brigitte is in the bathroom. The water is running into the bath.
.....

3. Peter is putting a new record on the record player.
.....

4. Tom has his camera in his hand and Alice is standing in front of an old castle.
She is smiling.
.....

VI. Practise beginning letters (use their first names). (10 points)

Example: You have just received a postcard. Begin a letter to Lucille Jones. ("I'm so sorry")

Dear Lucille,

I have just received your postcard. I'm so sorry.

1. You have just seen a new film, Jungle Moon. Begin a letter to Sam Sprott, the producer. ("I think the film is marvelous.")
.....

2. You have just read an article about prisons in The Times. Begin a letter to Maggie Priest, the writer. ("I agree with you completely.")
.....

3. You have just heard a new record, Earth Song. Begin a letter to Chris Lackson, the drummer. ("I think the record is tremendous.")
-
.....

4. You have just listened to a talk on the radio about telepathy. Begin a letter to the speaker, Professor Anderson. ("I'm sure you are right.")
-
.....

5. You have just watched a programme about Bali on television. Begin a letter to Dick Jenkins, the photographer. ("I think the photography was superb.")
-
.....

6. You have just read a book sent to you by your friend, Mark. Begin a letter to him. ("I found the book very interesting.")
-
.....

VII. Simple Present, Present Perfect or Simple Past? (10 points)

1. How long here? (*do you live/ have you lived/ did you live*)
2. I Mary since 1980. (*know/ have known/ knew*)
3. I think I her very well. (*know/ have known/ knew*)
4. How long that watch? (*do you have/ have you had/ did you have*)
5. I it last year. (*buy/ have bought/ bought*)
6. I in this school since February. (*am/ have been/ was*)

VIII. Since, for or ago? (10 points)

1. We've lived in London eight years.
2. I've only known her yesterday.
3. My grandmother died three years
4. I've been working four o'clock this morning.
5. She's been a teacher eighteen years.
6. It's been raining three days.

7. I first went to Africa about seven years
8. Mary phoned a few minutes
9. I haven't seen her weeks.

KEY TO DIALOGUE

1. I think Mrs. Scott is George's landlady.
2. He has spilt his coffee.
3. She has given him a cloth.
4. No, she doesn't.

KEY TO STRUCTURE

Structure Practice 1.1

1. Good morning. I wonder if you can help me. I've lost my mobile phone.
2. Good morning. I wonder if you can help me. I've forgotten my receipt.
3. Good morning. I wonder if you can help me. I've forgotten my invitation.
4. Good morning. I wonder if you can help me. I've broken my glasses.
5. Good morning. I wonder if you can help me. I've lost my ticket.
6. Good morning. I wonder if you can help me. I've left my handbag inside.

Structure Practice 1.2

1. Have you looked in all your pockets?
2. Have you seen your dentist?
3. Have you reported it to the post office?
4. Have you asked at the police station?
5. Have you looked in the refrigerator?
6. Have you been to your doctor?
7. Have you looked in your telephone directory?
8. Have you taken an aspirin?

Structure Practice 2.1

2. How long have you taught English?
3. How long have you known Carol?
4. How long has your brother been in Australia?
5. How long have you had that jacket?
6. How long has Alan worked at the informatics company ?

7. How long have you been having driving lessons?

8. How long have you lived in Glasgow?

Structure Practice 2.2

(Câu trả lời phụ thuộc vào bạn.)

Structure Practice 3.1

(Câu trả lời tùy thuộc vào thời điểm bạn làm bài tập.)

Structure practice 3.2

2. for 3. for 4. since 5. since

6. for 7. for 8. since

Structure Practice 4.1

2. I'll lend 3. I'll get

4. I'm going to wash 5. are you going to paint

6. I'm going to buy 7. I'll show

8. I'll have 9. I'll do

10. it is going to fall 11. He's going to have ... he's going to do

Structure Practice 4.2

1. He's going to buy the green pullover, so he's not going to buy the blue pullover.

2. They're going to see "The Orient Express", so they're not going to see "The Italian job".

3. They're not going to have roast lamb, so they're going to have roast beef.

4. She's going to travel by air, so she's not going to travel by train.

5. He's not going to ride Winter Fair, so he's going to ride Saratoga Skiddy.

KEY TO LISTENING

Tapescript

- I'm taking a year off next year.

- Yes? Lucky you. Can you afford it?

- Well, one of my uncles died last year and left me some money. So I'm going to buy some free time.

- Oh, great. What are you going to do?

- Oh, lots of things. First of all I'm going to take a big rest. Read my books, listen to music, watch some of my videos, that sort of thing. Then I'm going to do all the things I've always wanted to do. I'm going to learn Chinese, study astronomy, start playing the violin again, walk right across Scotland, take up skiing, write a novel, play some football.

Unit 2: I'm afraid I've an accident

- Yes, well, I hope you have a good time. One year, you said?
- No, that's just the spring. Then in summer I'm going to travel round the world, learn karate,...

1. a

c

f

h.

i

2. The man is going to:

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| - take a big rest | - read books |
| - listen to music | - watch some videos |
| - do all the things he has always wanted to do | - learn Chinese |
| - study astronomy | - start playing the violin again |
| - walk right across Scotland | - take up skiing |
| - write a novel | - play some football |
| - travel round the world | - learn karate |

KEY TO READING

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. Yes | 2. Yes | 3. Yes | 4. No |
| 5. Yes | 6. Yes | 7. No | 8. Yes |

KEY TO SELF-TEST

I.

- 2. How long has she learned Italian? When did she start learning Italian?
- 3. How long have you known him/ Martin? When did you first meet him/ Martin?
- 4. How long have they been married?

When did they get married? (When did they marry? *is possible but less usual*)

- 5. How long have you lived in Hanoi? When did you live in Hanoi?

II.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------|--------------------|
| 1. Have you read | 2. read | 3. saw |
| 4. Have you ever been | 5. went | 6. have never seen |
| 7. has been | 8. has crashed | 9. was |
| 10. has been | | |

III.

- | | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|-----|
| 1a | 2a | 3b | 4a | 5b |
| 6a | 7b | 8a | 9b | 10a |

IV.

1. Bob took the exam.
2. Did he pass the exam?
3. No, he didn't.
4. He is going to take the exam again.
5. Is he going to take the exam again this year?

V.

1. They are going to play tennis.
2. She is going to have a bath.
3. He is going to listen to music/ listen to the record.
4. They are going to take photographs.

VI.

1. Dear Sam,

I have just seen your new film. I think the film is marvelous.

2. Dear Maggie,

I have just read your article about prisons in The Times. I agree with you completely.

3. Dear Chris,

I have just heard your new record, Earth Song. I think the record is tremendous.

4. Dear Anderson,

I have just listened to your talk on the radio about telepathy. I'm sure you are right.

5. Dear Dick,

I have just watched your programme about Bali on television. I think the photography was superb.

6. Dear Mark,

I have just read the book you sent. I found the book very interesting.

VII.

- | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. have you lived | 2. have known | 3. know |
| 4. have you had | 5. bought | 6. have been |

VIII.

- | | | |
|----------|----------|--------|
| 1. for | 2. since | 3. ago |
| 4. since | 5. for | 6. for |
| 7. ago | 8. ago | 9. for |

VOCABULARY

Bạn nên tham khảo bảng từ vựng thường xuyên trong quá trình học, không chỉ riêng bài này mà tất cả các bài khác để tăng vốn từ vựng tiếng Anh.

astronomy [ɔ:s'trɔnɔmɪ]	n thiên văn học
bucket ['bʌkɪt]	n cái xô
card [kɑ:d]	n thẻ
castle ['kɑ:sl]	n lâu đài
cloth [klɔθ]	n vải, tấm vải
come out	v xuất hiện, được biết đến
comedy ['kɒmɪdɪ]	n hài kịch, phim hài
completely [kəm'pli:tli]	adv một cách hoàn toàn
definitely ['defɪnitli]	adv một cách rõ ràng
drummer ['drʌmə]	n nhạc công chơi trống
karate [kɑ:rət̩:ti]	n môn võ karate
marvelous ['mævələs]	adj tuyệt diệu, tuyệt vời
never mind	expr đừng bận tâm, đừng chú ý
plaster ['plɑ:stə]	n thạch cao
prison ['prɪzn]	n nhà tù
producer [prə'dju:sə]	n nhà sản xuất
racket ['rækɪt]	n cái vợt (chơi tennis, bóng bàn)
receipt [ri'si:t]	n biên lai
rugby ['rʌgbɪ]	n môn bóng bầu dục
spill [spil]	v làm tràn, làm đổ
superb [su:'pɔ:b]	adj nguy nga, tuyệt vời, thượng hạng
take up	v tiếp tục
telepathy [ti'lepθɔ:lji]	n thần giao cách cảm, ngoại cảm
tremendous [tri'mendəs]	adj to lớn, khủng khiếp, khác thường

UNIT 3. PLEASE SPEAK MORE SLOWLY

INTRODUCTION

Bây giờ bạn bắt đầu học bài 3. Trong bài này bạn sẽ luyện động từ nguyên mẫu có "to" chỉ mục đích, mẫu câu diễn đạt về sức khỏe, lời khuyên và động từ dạng thức mệnh lệnh.

Bây giờ bạn hãy xem phần mục đích của bài.

UNIT OBJECTIVES

Phần mục đích bài học giúp bạn biết cụ thể những kiến thức sẽ học trong bài 3. Phần tóm tắt và tự kiểm tra cuối bài được sắp xếp theo trình tự của những mục đích bài học. Bạn cần cố gắng đạt được các mục đích của bài học và nên thường xuyên xem lại phần mục đích này trong bài.

Học xong bài 3 bạn đã có thể:

1. Nói về tình trạng sức khỏe.
2. Hỏi thăm sức khỏe.
3. Đưa ra lời khuyên về vấn đề sức khỏe.
4. Thành lập câu sử dụng động từ nguyên mẫu có "to" chỉ mục đích.
5. Biết cách trả lời câu hỏi sử dụng động từ nguyên mẫu có "to".
6. Đưa ra lời khuyên.
7. Đặt câu mệnh lệnh thức.

3A. DIALOGUE

Trước hết bạn hãy nghe bài hội thoại (Unit 3. Dialogue).

Đây là đoạn hội thoại giữa một chàng trai và một cô gái. Họ đang hỏi thăm sức khỏe của nhau. Hãy nghe và nhắc lại theo từng câu mà bạn nghe thấy, sau đó đọc hội thoại 3 lần.

Woman: Good morning Mr. Culham. How are you?

Man: I feel ill.

Woman: I am sorry. What's the matter?

Man: My eyes hurt, and I have got a bad headache.

Woman: Oh, I hope you aren't catching flu. Why don't you take an aspirin?

Man: That's a good idea.

Bạn đã hoàn thành phần nghe và nói đầu tiên của bài, hãy chuyển sang phần thực hành hội thoại.

Dialogue Practice 1

Ta thấy trong bài có sử dụng cấu trúc câu nói về bệnh tật như sau:

S + feel + ill

S + hurt

S + have got + Noun / a + Noun

(Chủ ngữ + động từ *feel* + tính từ *ill*)

(Chủ ngữ + động từ *hurt*)

(Chủ ngữ + động từ *have got* + danh từ chỉ bệnh tật hoặc quanity từ *a* và danh từ bệnh tật)

Ví dụ: My leg hurts

I have got a cold.

Người Anh khi gặp nhau thường chào hỏi và hỏi thăm sức khoẻ của nhau. Những câu thường gặp là:

How are you?

Khi thấy bạn có vẻ không khoẻ thì ta hỏi:

What's the matter?

Bây giờ bạn hãy đọc cẩn thận đoạn hội thoại dưới đây.

John: Good afternoon, Jane. How are you?

Jane: I feel ill.

John: Oh! I am sorry. What's the matter?

Jane: My feet hurt, and I have got a temperature.

John: Oh! I hope you aren't catching flu. Why don't you go to the doctor?

Bạn đọc đi đọc lại nhiều lần, đọc đúng ngữ điệu, có gắng nhớ cấu trúc câu trên không cần nhìn sách. Nếu từ nào chưa biết bạn hãy tra nghĩa ở bảng từ vựng cuối bài.

Dialogue Practice 2

Bạn hãy sử dụng những từ cho dưới đây để diễn đạt bạn bị đau ốm như thế nào và đưa ra lời gợi ý.

Ví dụ: My hand hurts.

Why don't you see the doctor?

1. a cold.

Why? /go to see the doctor/

2. a temperature.

Why? /take an aspirin/

3. My hand

Why? /go home and lie down/

4. a headache.

Why? /go to the doctor/

5. toothache.

Why? /see the dentist/

6. My eyes

Why? /see the doctor/

7. My knee.....

Why? /go home and lie down/

8.flu.

Why? /take an aspirin/

9. My arm

Why? /go to the doctor/

10. My head

Why? /go to hospital/

Dialogue Practice 3

Bây giờ bạn hãy diễn đủ lời đói thoại sau:

1. A: I've got a cold.

- B: medicine?
2. A: How are you?
B: ill.
- A: doctor?
3. A: bad headache.
B: aspirin?
4. A: What's the problem?
B: eyes
A: wear glasses?
B: idea!
5. A: temperature?
B: No, I don't think so.

3B. STRUCTURE

Trong bài này chúng ta gặp cấu trúc câu có sử dụng động từ nguyên mẫu có "to". Trước hết hãy đọc một số câu sau đây rồi lưu ý các cấu trúc:

Mr. Andrews is an English tourist who is travelling to Eastern Europe tomorrow. Just now he's having breakfast at home. After breakfast he's going out to do a lot of things. (For example, he's going to Harrods to buy a suitcase).

- **to + verb: to buy / to have / to see...**
- **for + noun: for some bread / for dinner / for a holiday...**
- **money / time to do something**

Ví dụ: He went to the shop to buy some bread.

Anh ấy đi ra cửa hàng để mua một ít bánh mỳ.

We need some money to buy food.

Chúng tôi cần một ít tiền để mua thực phẩm.

I haven't got time to watch TV.

Tôi không có thời giờ để xem truyền hình.

Note: Cấu trúc chỉ mục đích thường trả lời câu hỏi Why? (tại sao), What... for? (để làm gì).

Structure Practice 1

Bạn hãy viết câu với: *I went to the... to...*, sử dụng các từ gợi ý dưới đây.

Unit 3: Please speak more slowly

get some medicine	meet a friend	get a visa
buy a newspaper	get some money	buy some food
buy some books	catch the train	borrow some books
post letters		

Ví dụ: I went to the bus stop to catch a bus.

1. (the station)
2. (the bank)
3. (the supermarket)
4. (the post office)
5. (the café)
6. (the book shop)
7. (the newsagent's)
8. (the library)
9. (the embassy)
10. (the chemist's)

Structure Practice 2

Hãy kết thúc câu bằng phần cuối đúng nhất.

- to open the door
- to watch the news
- to see the pyramids
- to see who it was
- to let some fresh air into the room
- to tell him about the party
- to read the newspaper
- to wake them up
- to get some petrol
- to clean it

1. I turned on the television
2. She sat down in an armchair
3. Do I need a key?
4. The house is dirty but they don't have time

5. She opened the window
6. I knocked on their bedroom door
7. We stopped at a petrol station
8. A lot of people go to Egypt
9. I phoned Tom
10. The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window

Structure Practice 3

Bạn hãy viết "to hoặc for" vào chỗ trống sao cho thích hợp.

1. She went to the shop buy some bread.
2. We stopped at a petrol station some petrol.
3. I'm going to walk home. I haven't got any money a taxi.
4. We went to a restaurant have dinner.
5. He wants to go to university study economics.
6. I'm going to London visit a friend of mine.
7. I'm going to London an interview next week.
8. I got up late this morning. I didn't have time wash.
9. Everybody needs money live.
10. The office is very small. There's space only a table and a chair.

3C. LISTENING

Listening Practice 1

Đây là một vài lái khuyên về môn thể thao chạy. Bạn hãy thử xác định xem lái khuyên nào đúng, sai. Nếu bạn cho là đúng thì bạn gạch chân dưới chữ T, sai thì gạch chân dưới chữ F.

1. Wear good running shoes.T / F....
2. Run early in the morning. It's better.T / F....
3. Wear comfortable clothing.T / F....
4. Always warm up before you run.T / F....
5. Always run with somebody - never run alone.T / F....
6. Rest every ten minutes or so.T / F....
7. Walk for a few minutes after you finish.T / F....
8. Don't run if you feel tired.T / F....

Unit 3: Please speak more slowly

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| 9. Don't run until two hours after eating. |T / F..... |
| 10. Never drink water while you are running. |T / F..... |
| 11. Don't run if you have got a cold. |T / F..... |
| 12. Don't run fast downhill. |T / F..... |
| 13. Don't run if you are over 50. |T / F..... |
| 14. Don't run on roads in fog. |T / F..... |

Listening Practice 2

Trước tiên bạn hãy đọc các cụm từ sau:

a good / bad idea

not true

a good piece of advice

you should / shouldn't

I don't think it matters

it's up to you

your own choice

Bây giờ hãy nghe hai người Anh đang khuyên bạn về môn thể thao chạy (Unit 3. Listening). Bạn hãy nghe đi nghe lại nhiều lần, đánh dấu (+) vào ô họ khuyên *nên làm* (should), *không nên làm* (shouldn't) hay *cũng được* (all right). Dưới đây là từ ngữ gợi ý cho bạn.

Speaker Should Shouldn't All right			
Speaker 1:			
1.wear good running shoes			
2.run early in the morning			
3.wear comfortable clothing			
4.warm up before you run			
5.run with somebody or alone			
6.rest every ten minutes			
7.walk for a bit after you've run			
8.run if you feel tired			
9.run if you've got a cold			
10.run fast downhill			

Unit 3: Please speak more slowly

11.run if you're over fifty			
12.run in fog			
Speaker 2:			
13.wear good shoes			
14.the time of day you run			
15.wear comfortable clothing			
16.warm up before you run			
17.walk for a few minutes after you finish			
18.run on roads in fog			
19.run until two hours after eating			
20.drink while you are actually running			
21.rest every ten minutes			
22.run if you are over fifty			

3D. READING

Bạn hãy đọc bài đọc sau, gạch dưới những từ chỉ mệnh lệnh trong đoạn đầu tiên (Sit down ... to a story).

Sit down, children. Time for your story. Are you all sitting comfortably? Good. Then I'll begin. Once upon a time, long long ago, there was a beautiful girl who lived with her mother and father in a small village. She - don't do that, George - she worked very hard on her father's farm looking after the cows - George, stop that! Mary, sit down at once - looking after the cows and the horses and the sheep. No, Sally, you are not a sweet little baby baa-lamb. You are a nice sensible little girl who is listening to a story.

Every day - Bill, take that out of your mouth - she got up very early and milked the cows - don't make that stupid noise, Alice, please. Then she cleaned the house, and fed the animals, and made breakfast - Don't do that, George - breakfast for her mother and father.

One day, while she was cleaning the kitchen, she looked out of the window, and she saw - what do you think she saw, children? No, George, not Superman. No, Sylvia, not Mickey Mouse. Now don't be stupid, children. Think. What do you think she saw? James Bond, Louisa? Really! Sit down, please, Mary, and you, Celia, George...

Reading Practice 1

Bạn hãy đặt những từ ngữ sao cho phù hợp với mỗi bức tranh dưới đây.

Please hurry, darling.

Don't worry.

Take your time, darling.

Unit 3: Please speak more slowly

Wait here, please.

Look.

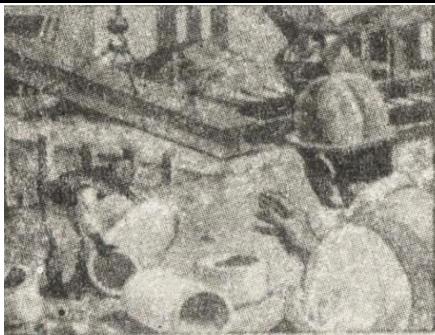
Please come in.

Follow me, please.

Be careful, dear.

Look out!

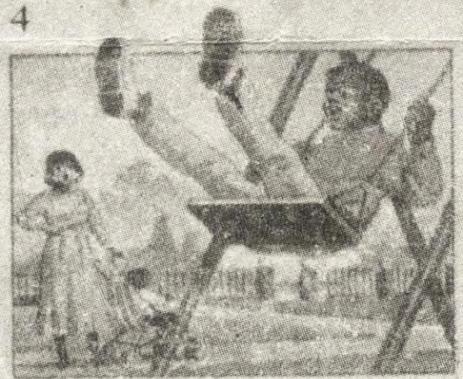
Unit 3: Please speak more slowly



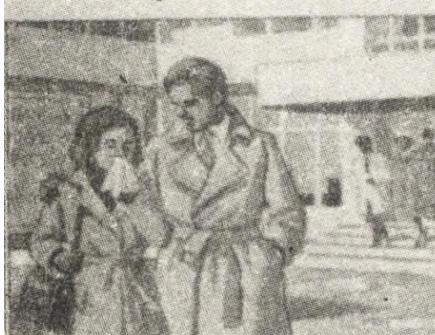
2



3



5



8



Unit 3: Please speak more slowly

Note 1: Có thể dùng động từ nguyên dạng không có "to" để yêu cầu ai đó làm việc gì. Đối tượng là ngôi thứ 2 số ít hay số nhiều (câu thường ẩn chủ từ).

Ví dụ: Read the text, please.

Note 2: Có thể dùng "let us" hoặc "let's" + động từ nguyên dạng để yêu cầu, đề nghị cùng tham gia hành động.

Ví dụ: Let's have a party this evening.

Reading Practice 2

Bạn hãy yêu cầu người khác thực hiện các hành động sau (dùng từ gợi ý trong khung).

the TV	your friend	the records to him
the fire	the key	the letter in the envelope
your shoes	my iron	the new pullover to the
your sweater	the book to the library	shop

Ví dụ: Turn off the light, please!

Bạn hãy tắt đèn đi!

You can take my umbrella, but please bring it back!

Bạn có thể mượn ô nhưng xin bạn hãy mang trả lại tôi!

1. Take off....., please!
2. Put on....., please!
3. Ring up....., please!
4. Pick up....., please!
5. Put down....., please!
6. Bring back....., please!
7. Take back....., please!
8. Give back....., please!
9. Turn on....., please!
10. Turn off....., please!
11. Put back....., please!

Reading Practice 3

Bây giờ bạn hãy yêu cầu người khác không được, hay đừng làm việc gì bằng câu trúc: "don't + V (infinitive)".

Ví dụ: Don't turn off the radio, I want to listen to the news.

Bằng những từ gợi ý sau, bạn hãy hoàn thành nốt câu.

the radio	the TV	the door	the window	the grass
this apple	out	the dentist	me	his money

1. turn off I want to listen to the news.
2. turn on I don't want to watch it.
3. open It is rather cold in the room.
4. walk on We are in the park now.
5. eat It is very dirty.
6. go It is raining.
7. go He's out.
8. close It is dark in the room.
9. phone I'm very busy.
10. borrow He hasn't got any money.

Bạn hãy kiểm tra lại câu trả lời trong phần Key to Reading, sau đó đọc to và trôi chảy từng câu trong bài đọc.

Bạn đã học xong các cấu trúc ngữ pháp và làm bài tập của Unit 3. Bạn có thể nghỉ giải lao. Sau đó bạn hãy đọc phần Summary và xem lại phần Unit objectives để ôn lại toàn bài. Tiếp theo bạn hãy làm bài Self-test.

SUMMARY

Tới lúc này bạn đã học tất cả những nội dung ghi trong phần tóm tắt dưới đây. Nếu chưa nắm vững phần nào, bạn hãy đọc lại phần đó và làm các bài tập cho đến khi bạn đạt được các mục đích của bài học.

Học xong bài này bạn có thể:

1. Nói về vấn đề sức khỏe.

I feel ill. I have got a cold.

2. Hỏi thăm sức khỏe.

What's the matter?

What's the problem?

3. Khuyên bạn về vấn đề sức khỏe.

Why don't you go to the doctor?

4. Sử dụng động từ nguyên mẫu có "to" chỉ mục đích trong câu trần thuật và câu hỏi.

Why do you go to the bookshop?

(hoặc: What do you go to the bookshop for?)

I go to the bookshop to buy some books.

Trả lời ngắn: To buy some books.

5. Đưa ra lời khuyên.

Don't run if you have got a cold.

6. Luyện đặt câu dùng động từ ở dạng thức mệnh lệnh.

It's going to rain. Hurry please!

Turn on the radio. I want to listen to music.

Don't walk on the grass.

SELF-TEST

Bây giờ bạn hãy làm bài kiểm tra. Thời gian tối đa dành cho bài kiểm tra này là 120 phút. Điểm dành cho mỗi câu hỏi được ghi trong ngoặc ở đầu mỗi câu.

Nếu bạn trả lời đúng tất cả các câu hỏi của bài tự kiểm tra, tức là bạn đã đạt được các mục đích của bài học và bạn có thể chuyển sang bài tiếp theo.

I. Complete the dialogue. (10 points)

Tom: John; How?

John: feel; have got

Tom: Oh! Why the doctor?

John: But I don't want go doctor.

Tom: Oh! aspirin.

John: you. Good bye.

Tom:

II. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use one of these words in the box. (10 points)

you for must you opened picked had

like with crow me fell once sing saw

A crow stole a piece of cheese. She flew(1) it to a tree. A fox(2) the crow. The fox wanted the piece of cheese(3) himself. He began to praise the(4). He said, "What fine black feathers(5) have! Your voice(6)

Unit 3: Please speak more slowly

be fine, too! I would(7) to hear(8) sing. Please sing(9) a song."
The foolish crow was very pleased. She(10) her mouth to(11). The
piece of cheese(12) to the ground. The silly fox(13) it up at
.....(14). He ran away quite delighted. His trick(15) succeeded.

**III. Why are you learning English? Use the following phrases to answer the questions
using to / because. (20 points)**

Example: Read English books

We are learning English to read English books.

1. Read English literature.

.....

2. Travel to English-speaking countries.

.....

3. Do business in English.

.....

4. Use English for international communication.

.....

5. We like the language.

.....

6. We have to learn it at school.

.....

7. It is necessary for our work.

.....

8. Understand songs and films in English.

.....

9. Travel to Australia.

.....

10. Write a letter to our English friends.

.....

IV. Complete these sentences. (20 points)

Example: Why shoe shop? I some shoes.

Why do you go to the shoe shop? I go to the shoe shop to buy some shoes.

Unit 3: Please speak more slowly

1. Why school? I study.
2. Why bookshop? I books.
3. Why post office? I letters.
4. Why airport? I a plane.
5. Why bank? I money.
6. Why embassy? I visa.
7. Why restaurant? I a meal.
8. Why grocer's? I some food.
9. Why zoo? I interesting animals.
10. Why café? I a drink.

V. Read the passage. Underline the verbs that are in imperative form. Then translate the text into Vietnamese. (15 points)

New York, New York!

Spend two weeks in exciting New York City. Theatre, dance, opera, museums,...

Winner takes all! Come to Las Vegas and try your luck. When you are tired of winning at the casino, relax by the pool or go to watch a fabulous show...

White water magic: If you are a confirmed sportsman or sportswoman, spend an exciting two weeks with us canoeing in the beautiful Rocky Mountains...

Float along: Enjoy beautiful Texas scenery and wildlife while relaxing on a raft floating down the Rio Grande. A photographer's delight! Comfortable tent accommodation at night...

.....
.....
.....
.....

VI. Chose one of these phrases to complete sentences. (10 points)

look out	come in	look	don't worry	wait here
follow me	be careful	please hurry	take your time	don't drive

1., there are eggs in that box.
2., everything's all right.
3. and sit down, Mr Pearson. What can I do for you?
4., my plane is at four o'clock, and it's 3.15 now.
5., please, your seats are right over there.

6.! There's your brother over there.
7.! There's a car coming.
8. Ms. Wilsdom is busy at the moment. Could you , please?
9. "I'm terribly sorry!" "That's all right. I'm not in a hurry.!"
10. fast in fog.

VII. Translate these sentences into English. (10 points)

1. Tôi sẽ đi Hải Phòng để thăm bố mẹ.

.....

2. Anh chị hãy học tập chăm chỉ hơn.

.....

3. - Chào bạn, hôm nay bạn có khỏe không?

- Cám ơn, mình không được khỏe lắm. Mình nghĩ mình sẽ bị ốm mất vì mình thấy mệt kinh khủng.

- Sao bạn không đến bác sĩ nhỉ?

.....

.....

4. Tôi không còn con tem nào cả. Tôi sẽ ra bưu điện để mua vài chiếc.

.....

5. Lúc này ông giám đốc Wilsdom đang bận, anh chả một lát được không?

.....

KEY TO DIALOGUE

Dialogue Practice 1

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. I have got a cold. | Why don't you go to see the doctor? |
| 2. I've got a temperature. | Why don't you take an aspirin? |
| 3. My hand hurts. | Why don't you go home and lie down? |
| 4. I've got a headache. | Why don't you go to the doctor? |
| 5. I've got a toothache. | Why don't you go to see the dentist? |
| 6. My eyes hurt. | Why don't you go to see the doctor? |
| 7. My knee hurts. | Why don't you go home and lie down? |
| 8. I've got flu. | Why don't you take an aspirin? |
| 9. My arm hurts. | Why don't you go to the doctor? |

10. My head hurts.

Why don't you go to hospital?

Dialogue Practice 2

1. B: Why don't you take some medicine?

2. B: I feel ill.

A: Why don't you go to the doctor?

3. A: I've got a bad headache.

B: Why don't you take an aspirin?

4. B: My eyes hurt.

A: Why don't you wear glasses?

B: That's a good idea!

5. A: Have you got a temperature?

KEY TO STRUCTURE

Structure Practice 1

1. I went to the station to catch the train.
2. I went to the bank to get some money.
3. I went to the supermarket to buy some food.
4. I went to the post office to post letters.
5. I went to the café to meet a friend.
6. I went to the book shop to buy some books.
7. I went to the newsagents' to buy a newspaper.
8. I went to the library to borrow some books.
9. I went to the embassy to get a visa.
10. I went to the chemist's to buy some medicine.

Structure Practice 2

1. I turned on the TV to watch the news.
2. She sat down in an armchair to read the newspaper.
3. Do I need a key to open the door?
4. The house is dirty but they don't have time to clean it.
5. She opened the window to let some fresh air into the room.
6. I knocked on their bedroom door to wake them up.
7. We stopped at the petrol station to get some petrol.

8. A lot of people go to Egypt to see the pyramids.
9. I phoned Tom to tell him about the party.
10. The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window to see who it was.

Structure Practice 3

- | | | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|-------|---------|
| 1. to | 2. for | 3. for | 4. to | 5. to |
| 6. to | 7. for | 8. to | 9. to | 10. for |

KEY TO LISTENING

Tapescript

Speaker 1: Erm, I think you should wear good running shoes. Erm, I don't think it matters if you run early in the morning or whatever time of day. I think you should wear comfortable clothing. You should warm up before you run. Erm, it's up to you whether you run with somebody or alone. Erm, definitely I don't think you should rest every ten minutes. I think you should walk for a bit after you've run, after you've finished. Erm, I think it's bad advice not to run if you feel tired; erm, bad advice not to drink water when you're running. Erm, I think don't run till two hours after eating is good advice. Erm, I don't think it matters if you run when you've got a cold or not. I think it's good advice not to run fast downhill. Erm, I think it's bad advice not to run if you're over fifty; and I think it's good advice not to run in fog.

Speaker 2: I think it's very good idea to wear good running shoes. I think running, the time of day you run would be your own personal choice. If I go through the good advice, perhaps, I think wear comfortable clothing, warm up before you run, walk for a few minutes after you finish, erm, and certainly don't run on roads in fog. And I think don't run until two hours after eating's a good piece of advice as well. I think the idea about drinking water is that you shouldn't drink while you're actually running, erm, because you are very hot, and it's better to wait until after you finish running to drink. As far as, I don't know exactly about some of the advice, like whether you have a cold or feel tired, erm, but certainly I think it's a bad idea to rest every ten minutes or so and it's certainly not true to say that you can't run if you are over fifty.

Listening Practice 1 (according to the teacher)

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. T | 2. F | 3. T | 4. T | 5. F |
| 6. F | 7. T | 8. T | 9. T | 10. F |
| 11. T | 12. F | 13. F | 14. T | |

Listening Practice 2

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. Should | 8. Should | 15. Should |
| 2. All right | 9. All right | 16. Should |
| 3. Should | 10. Should | 17. Should |
| 4. Should | 11. Should | 18. Shouldn't |
| 5. All right | 12. Shouldn't | 19. Should |

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 6. Shouldn't | 13. Should | 20. Shouldn't |
| 7. Should | 14. All right | 21. Shouldn't |
| | | 22. Should |

KEY TO READING

1. sit down 2. don't do 3. stop 4. sit down

Reading Practice 1

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Look out. | 6. Be careful, dear. |
| 2. Wait here, please. | 7. Don't worry. |
| 3. Please come in. | 8. Please hurry, darling. |
| 4. Follow me, please. | 9. Take your time, darling. |
| 5. Look. | |

Reading Practice 2

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. your shoes | 7. the new pullover to the shop |
| 2. your sweater | 8. the records to him |
| 3. your friend | 9. the TV |
| 4. the key | 10. the fire |
| 5. my iron | 11. the letter in the envelope |
| 6. the book to the library | |

Reading Practice 3

1. Don't turn off the radio.
2. Don't turn on the TV.
3. Don't open the door.
4. Don't walk on the grass.
5. Don't eat this apple.
6. Don't go out.
7. Don't go to the dentist.
8. Don't close the window.
9. Don't phone me.
10. Don't borrow his money.

KEY TO SELF-TEST

I.

- Tom: Hello John. How are you?
John: I feel ill. I have got a bad headache.
Tom: Oh! I am sorry. Why don't you go to the doctor?
John: But I don't want to go to the doctor.
Tom: Oh! Take an aspirin.
John: Thank you, good bye.
Tom: Good bye.

II.

- | | | | |
|---------|---------|------------|------------|
| 1. with | 5. you | 9. me | 13. picked |
| 2. saw | 6. must | 10. opened | 14. once |
| 3. for | 7. like | 11. sing | 15. had |
| 4. crow | 8. you | 12. fell | |

III.

1. We are learning English to read English literature.
2. We are learning English to travel to English-speaking countries.
3. We are learning English to do business in English.
4. We are learning English to use English for international communications.
5. We are learning English because we like the language.
6. We are learning English because we have to learn it at school.
7. We are learning English because it is necessary for our work.
8. We are learning English to understand songs and films in English.
9. We are learning English to travel to Australia.
10. We are learning English to write letters to our English friends.

IV.

1. Why do you go to school? I go to school to study.
2. Why do you go to the bookshop? I go to the bookshop to buy some books.
3. Why do you go to the post office? I go to the post office to post letters.
4. Why do you go to the airport? I go to the airport to catch a plane.
5. Why do you go to the bank? I go to the bank to get some money.
6. Why do you go to the embassy? I go to the embassy to get a visa.

7. Why do you go to the restaurant? I go to the restaurant to have a meal.
8. Why do you go to the grocer's? I go to the grocer's to buy some food.
9. Why do you go to the zoo? I go to the zoo to see interesting animals.
10. Why do you go to the café? I go to the café to have a drink.

V.

spend; come; try; relax; go; enjoy

New York, New York!

Các bạn hãy dành hai tuần ở thành phố New York sôi động. Nhà hát, khiêu vũ, opera, viện bảo tàng...

Người thắng được tất cả! Các bạn hãy đến Lasvegas và hãy thử vận may. Khi các bạn mệt mỏi, hoặc thắng ở sòng bạc, bạn hãy thư giãn bên bể bơi hoặc đi xem một buổi biểu diễn tuyệt hảo...

Sự lôi cuốn của dòng nước trắng: Nếu bạn là một người chơi thể thao kiên định, bạn hãy dành ra hai tuần bơi xuồng sôi động cùng với chúng tôi ở Mountain Rocky xinh đẹp...

Trôi xuôi dòng: Bạn hãy vui thích với phong cảnh Texas xinh đẹp và cuộc sống hoang dã khi thư giãn trên một bè gỗ trôi nổi xuôi dòng Grand Reo. Một sự vui thích dành cho nhà nhiếp ảnh! Lèu nghỉ đêm tiện lợi...

VI.

- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------------|
| 1. Be careful | 5. Follow me | 9. Take your time |
| 2. Don't worry | 6. Look | 10. Don't drive |
| 3. Come in | 7. Look out | |
| 4. Please hurry | 8. Wait here | |

VII.

1. I am going to Hai Phong City to see my parents.
2. Please study (work) harder!
3. - Good morning! How are you?
 - Thank you, I am not very well, I think I am going to be sick because I feel terribly tired.
 - Why don't you go to the doctor?
4. I haven't got any stamps. I am going to the post office to buy some.
5. The director is busy at the moment. Could you wait a moment, please?

VOCABULARY

canoeing

n

bơi xuồng

Unit 3: Please speak more slowly

casino [kə'si:nou]	n	sòng bạc
communication [kə'mju:nɪ'keiən]	n	sự giao tiếp, truyền đạt, thông tin
confirm [kə'fɜ:m]	v	xác nhận, chứng thực
cow [kau]	n	trâu bò cái, voi cái
delight [dɪ'lait]	v,n	làm vui thích, sự vui thích
downhill ['daunhil]	adv	xuống dốc
economics [i:kə'nɒmɪks]	n	kinh tế học
embassy [əm'bæsi]	n	đại sứ
fabulous [fæbju'ləs]	adj	tuyệt hảo, thần thoại, kinh hoàng
float [flaut]	v	nổi, trôi bồng bềnh
fog [fɒg]	n	sương mù
frown [frəʊn]	v	cau mày
hurt [hɜ:t]	v	đau, làm đau
lie down	v	nằm nghỉ
literature ['lɪtrətʃər]	n	văn chương, văn học
look out	v	coi chừng, chú ý
magic ['mædʒɪk]	n	ma thuật, ảo thuật, sự lôi cuốn
moth [mɔ:tʃ]	n	con mọt
personal choice [tʃo:sɪs]	n	sự lựa chọn cá nhân
pyramid ['paɪrəmid]	n	kim tự tháp
raft [ræft]	n	bè gỗ
relax [ri'læks]	v	thư giãn
scenery ['se:nəri]	n	phong cảnh
sportsman ['spɔ:tsmən]	n	vận động viên nam
sportswoman ['spɔ:ts,wumən]	n	vận động viên nữ
superman ['su:pəmæn]	n	siêu nhân
upon [əpən]	prep	trên, ở trên
warm up ['wɔ:mʌp]	v	làm ấm lên

UNIT 4. ARE YOU SURE YOU'LL BE ALL RIGHT?

INTRODUCTION

Phần mục đích bài học giúp bạn biết cụ thể những gì bạn sẽ học trong bài. Phần tóm tắt và tự kiểm tra cuối bài được sắp xếp theo trình tự của những mục đích bài học. Bạn cần cố gắng đạt được các mục đích của bài học và thường xuyên xem lại phần mục đích này trong khi học bài.

Bây giờ bạn hãy xem phần Mục đích của Bài 4.

UNIT OBJECTIVES

Học xong Bài 4 bạn đã có thể:

1. Biết được cấu trúc câu dùng động từ tương lai đơn.
2. Sử dụng động từ thì tương lai đơn.
3. Làm quen với cấu trúc câu điều kiện có thực, sử dụng “will”.
4. Luyện sử dụng trạng từ có tận cùng là “ly”.

4A. DIALOGUE

Trước hết bạn hãy nghe một đoạn hội thoại (Unit 4. Dialogue). Trong đoạn hội thoại này có sử dụng cấu trúc câu dùng động từ tương lai đơn. Bạn hãy nghe và nhắc lại từng câu ít nhất 3 lần. Đừng lo lắng nếu như trong khi nghe bạn chưa hiểu tất cả các từ.

- A: I'm going to hitch hike round the world.
B: Oh, that's very dangerous.
A: No, it isn't. I'll be all right.
B: Where will you sleep?
A: Oh. I don't know. In youth hostels. Cheap hotels.
B: You'll get lost.
A: No, I won't.
B: You won't get lifts.
A: Yes, I will.
B: What will you do for money?

Unit 4: Are you sure you'll be all right?

-
- A: I'll take money with me.
 B: You haven't got enough.
 A: If I need money, I'll find jobs.
 B: Well... Are you sure you'll be all right?
 A: Of course. I'll be all right.

Khi đã nghe và nhắc lại được theo bài, bạn hãy chuyển sang phần thực hành hội thoại.

Ta thấy trong bài có sử dụng một cấu trúc ngữ pháp, đó là thì tương lai đơn. Cấu trúc của động từ tương lai đơn thể hiện như sau:

S	+	will	+	Verb (infinitive)
(Chủ ngữ	+	will	+	động từ nguyên mẫu)
S	+	will not (won't)	+	Verb (infinitive)
(Chủ ngữ	+	will not (won't)	+	động từ nguyên mẫu)
Will	+	S	+	Verb (infinitive)?
(Will	+	chủ ngữ	+	động từ nguyên mẫu?)

Bây giờ ta chia động từ "to work".

Khẳng định	Phủ định	Nghị v@n
I will (I'll) work	Will I work?	I will not (I won't) work
You will (you'll) work	Will you work?	You will not (won't) work
He will (he'll) work	Will he work?	He will not (won't) work
She will (she'll) work	Will she work?	She will not (won't) work
It will (it'll) work	Will it work?	It will not (won't) work
We will (we'll) work	Will we work?	We will not (won't) work
You will (you'll) work	Will you work?	You will not (won't) work
They will (they'll) work	Will they work?	They will not (won't) work

Dưới đây là một số ví dụ thì tương lai đơn.

I will lend you some money. (Câu khẳng định)

(Tôi sẽ cho anh mượn một ít tiền.)

He will not lend you money. (Câu phủ định)

(Hắn sẽ không cho anh mượn tiền đâu.)

Will they go to school after breakfast? (Câu nghi vấn)

(Chúng sẽ đi học sau bữa sáng chứ?)

Note 1: Câu trả lái cho câu hỏi dạng đảo có 2 khả năng: có hoặc không.

Will they come?

Ta có thể trả lái như sau:

Yes, they will. / No, they won't.

Cách dùng: Động từ tương lai đơn dùng để:

- Chỉ tương lai đơn thuần

He will be seven years old this Friday.

Tomorrow will be Sunday.

- Chỉ khả năng

It will be warmer tomorrow.

- Chỉ dự định

I will move to a quieter neighbourhood.

- “I think I'll...” (Tôi nghĩ rằng tôi sẽ...) hay “I don't think I'll...” (Tôi không nghĩ rằng tôi sẽ...) thường được dùng để đưa ra một quyết định.

I think I'll stay at home this evening.

I don't think I'll go out tonight. I am too tired.

- “Will, shall” thường được dùng trong các tình huống sau:

+ Ngỏ ý muốn làm gì giúp ai

That bag looks very heavy. I'll help you with it.

+ Hứa hẹn làm điều gì

Thank you for lending me the money. I'll pay you back on Friday.

+ Yêu cầu ai làm điều gì

Will you open the window, please?

+ Xin phép ai làm gì

Shall I open the window?

Note 2: “Will” có thể dùng với tất cả các ngôi trong câu khẳng định. Nhưng đối với những câu gợi ý, đề nghị, yêu cầu... thì ở ngôi “I, we” ta dùng “shall”.

Shall I open the window?

Where shall we go this evening?

Dialogue Practice 1

Bây giờ bạn hãy xem lại bài hội thoại và hãy viết lại câu sử dụng cấu trúc tương lai đơn thứ tự từ trên xuống.

- 1.....
- 2.....
- 3.....
- 4.....
- 5.....
- 6.....
- 7.....
- 8.....
- 9.....
- 10.....
- 11.....

Dialogue Practice 2

Sau khi làm xong bài luyện 1 bạn hãy trả lái câu hỏi sau:

1. Where are you going?

.....

2. Is that very dangerous?

.....

3. Will you sleep in cheap hotels?

.....

4. Will you get lifts?

.....

5. What will you do for money?

.....

6. What will you do if you need money?

.....

7. Will you be all right?

.....

Dialogue Practice 3

Bây giờ bạn hãy hoàn thành các câu trong hội thoại này rồi thực hành nói.

1.

A: I'm going to be a racing driver.

B: (dangerous).....

A: (isn't / all right).....

B: (crash /get killed).....

A: (won't).....

B: (find a job).....

A: (will / good driver).....

B: (sure all right?).....

A: (course).....

2.

A: I'm going to be a doctor.

B: (have to study seven years).....

A: (know / I don't mind).....

B: (not finish your
studies).....

A: (will).....

B: (have a really hard
life).....

A:
(interesting).....

B: (have to work
hours)..... very long

A: (know / don't
mind).....

B: OK. If that's what you want.

A:
(is).....

4B. STRUCTURE

Trong bài này chúng ta hãy luyện tập động từ tương lai đơn trong cấu trúc câu bắt đầu bằng If... Để bài luyện đạt kết quả tốt, trước tiên bạn có thể xem cấu trúc sau:

If - S - Verb (simple present), S - will - Verb (inf)

Ví dụ:

If I need money, I'll find jobs.

Nếu tôi cần tiền, tôi sẽ tìm việc làm.

If you open that door, you'll see something strange.

Nếu bạn mở cửa ra, bạn sẽ thấy một điều kỳ lạ.

If it rains, we won't go out.

Nếu trời mưa chúng ta sẽ không đi ra ngoài.

If he comes, we won't go to the cinema.

Nếu hắn đến chúng ta sẽ không đi xem phim nữa.

Structure Practice 1

Bây giờ bạn hãy viết các câu để trả lời câu hỏi:

How does the machine work?

If you

press

pull

push

button

lever

handle

A,

B,

C,

D,

E

you'll get...

Ví dụ: If you push lever B, you'll get an electric shock.

Bạn hãy viết như câu mẫu.

1. button A, a surprise.
2. lever B, an electric shock.
3. lever C, a hamburger.
4. handle D, a flower.
5. handle E, hear music.
6. button F, a hot drink.

Structure Practice 2

Bây giờ bạn hãy đặt động từ đúng dạng vào chỗ trống.

Unit 4: Are you sure you'll be all right?

1. If you that button, you a cup of coffee. (press, get)
2. If I time, I and see you. (have, come)
3. If it, we the party inside. (rain, have)
4. I you if I help. (tell, need)
5. I hope you and see us if you in Chicago again. (come, be)
6. If you that door, you something strange. (open, see)
7. I surprised if he before 7 o'clock. (be, arrive)
8. If you fast, we time to play tennis. (eat, have)
9. If you up early tomorrow, I you to the swimming pool? (get, take)
10. I my car if I to live in London. (sell, go)

Structure Practice 3

Bạn hãy dùng các tính từ trong bảng để hoàn thiện các câu sau.

fat	dark	hungry	older	thirsty
drunk	tired	wet	cold	

1. If you don't eat, you'll get
2. If you eat too much, you'll get
3. If you don't drink, you'll get
4. If you drink too much alcohol, you'll get
5. If you run a long way, you'll get
6. If you go out in the rain without an umbrella, you'll get
7. If you go out in the snow without a coat, you'll get
8. In the evening, when the sun goes down, it gets
9. We are all getting

4C. LISTENING

Trước hết bạn hãy đọc những trạng từ sau:

angrily coldly happily kindly loudly sleepily

ở những bài trước chúng ta đã được biết các trạng từ thường được dùng làm rõ nghĩa cho động từ. Nó thường được cấu tạo từ một tính từ bằng cách cộng thêm "ly" vào sau tính từ.

Ví dụ: angry → angrily kind → kindly

A. Jetzt gibst du mir nochmal die Wörter aus der Übung 4 wieder und wähle eine passende Form für jedes Wort.

- 1.....
- 2.....
- 3.....
- 4.....
- 5.....
- 6.....

B. Du gehst mir nochmal die Sätze wieder und suchst nach den Adjektivformen, die die Stimmung des Sprechers wiedergeben.

- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 1..... | 4..... |
| 2..... | 5..... |
| 3..... | |

Note 1: Die Adjektive werden von den Adjektivformen abweichen, die die Stimmung des Sprechers wiedergeben. Sie geben dem Verb einen Sinn.

Ví dụ: He is a careful driver. He drives carefully.

Listening Practice 1

Nun gehst du mir die Sätze wieder und gibst mir die Adjektivformen, die die Stimmung des Sprechers wiedergeben.

Ví dụ: She is a quick worker. She works quickly.

1. I am verywithout you. (angry/ angrily)
2. She spoke to me(angry/ angrily)
3. I don't think your mother drinks very (good/ well)
4. You've got aface. (nice/ nicely)
5. I play guitar very (bad/ badly)
6. It'scold. (terrible/ terribly)
7. Your father's got a veryvoice. (loud/ loudly)
8. Why are you looking at me..... (cold/ coldly)
9. You speak very.....English. (good/ well)
10. You speak English very (good/ well)

Note 2: Wir verwenden auch Adjektive, um die Stimmung des Sprechers zu beschreiben.

Ví dụ: She sings very well.

adv adv

That film last night was very funny.

adv adj

Listening Practice 2

Bây giờ bạn hãy chọn 1 động từ + 1 trạng từ ở trong ô để điền đầy đủ câu:

come explain listen repeat
sleep think work are

carefully clearly easily well
carefully quickly hard well
angry slowly

1. I'm going to say something very important, so please to me
2. John! I need you help.!
3. I've met him but I don't him very
4. They At the end of the day they're always tired.
5. I'm tired this morning. I didn't last night.
6. You're a much better tennis player than me. When we play you always
7. before you answer the question.
8. Our teacher's isn't very good. He doesn't things very
9. Why you? I haven't done any thing.
10. Can you please that?

4D. READING

Trước hết bạn hãy đọc bài sau đây nhiều lần, có gắng hiểu nội dung bài. Nếu từ nào chưa rõ bạn hãy xem phần từ mới.

THE GREENHOUSE EFFECT

Scientists believe that something very serious is happening to the Earth. It is becoming warmer. Scientists predict that there will be major changes in the climate during the next century. Coastal water will have higher temperatures. This will have a serious effect on agriculture. Farmers will have trouble producing good crops. In warm regions the weather will be too dry. The amount of water could decrease by 50 percent. This would cause a large decrease in agricultural production.

World temperatures could increase from 1.5 to 5.6 degrees Celsius by the middle of the twenty-first century. And the increase in temperature could be even greater in the Arctic and Antarctic regions. A rise in temperatures could cause the great ice sheets to melt, which, in turn would raise the level of the oceans one to two meters. Many coastal cities would be underwater. Why is the Earth becoming warmer?

The Earth and its atmosphere are kept warm by the sun. The atmosphere lets most of the light from the sun pass through to warm the Earth. The Earth is warmed by the sunlight and

sends heat energy back into the atmosphere. Much of this energy escapes from the Earth's atmosphere. However, some of it remains. Gases such as carbon dioxide, ozone, and water vapor absorb this energy and create more heat. Then this heat is sent back down to Earth, and the Earth becomes warmer.

Scientists call this warming of the Earth and its atmosphere the "greenhouse effect". A greenhouse is a special place where plants are grown. It is made of glass or plastic. The Sunlight passes through the glass or plastic and warms the air inside. The heat inside escapes very slowly, so the greenhouse remains very warm. This is exactly what is happening on Earth.

Another reason why the Earth is growing warmer is because of the amount of ozone in our atmosphere. Ozone is also a gas, a form of oxygen. In the upper atmosphere, very far from the Earth, a layer of ozone helps to protect the Earth from 95 percent of the harmful light that comes from the sun. If your skin receives too much of this light, you could develop skin cancer. We need the ozone layer to protect ourselves. But the ozone layer is in trouble. Scientists have observed that the ozone layer is becoming thin, and above Antarctica there is a hole. This allows too much of the Sun's dangerous light into our atmosphere and makes the Earth warmer.

Sau khi đọc kỹ đoạn văn trên, bạn hãy trả lời các câu hỏi sau:

1. What is a greenhouse?

.....

2. What causes the greenhouse effect on Earth?

.....

3. Why do scientists call this the greenhouse effect?

.....

4. What gases in the atmosphere cause the Earth to become warmer?

.....

5. What does ozone layer protect people from?

.....

Reading Practice 1

Bạn hãy chọn từ thích hợp cho mỗi câu.

absorb	creates	measure	regions
carbon dioxide	encourage	occurring	serious
coastal	escapes	ozone	temperature

1. Scientists believe that something very is happening to the Earth.
2. Farmers will have trouble producing good crops. In warm, the weather will be too dry.

3. World could increase from 1.5 to 5.6 degrees Celsius by the middle of the twenty-first century.
4. This could cause the great ice sheets to melt, raising the level of the oceans by one to two meters. Many cities would be under water.
5. The Earth is warmed by the sunlight and sends heat energy back into the atmosphere. Much of this energy from the Earth's atmosphere.
6. The destruction of rain forests that carbon dioxide also helps increase the amount of carbon dioxide in our atmosphere.
7. Another reason why the Earth is growing warmer is because of the amount of in our atmosphere.
8. Scientists also people to learn about the changes that are in the world and how we can all help to protect our atmosphere.

Reading Practice 2

Bạn hãy viết T (đúng) nếu câu đúng và F (sai) nếu câu sai. Bạn hãy viết NI nếu không có đủ thông tin trong phần đọc để trả lời đúng hay sai.

1. Some scientists say that there will be major changes in the Earth's climate during the next century.
2. At the equator, the weather will be very dry, and farmers have trouble growing crops.
3. Some scientists say that there is too much oxygen in the air.
4. When wood burns, it creates carbon dioxide.
5. Some plastic materials also affect the ozone layer and cause the Earth to become warmer.
6. World temperatures could increase from 1.5 to 5.6 degrees Celsius by the middle of the twenty first century.
7. Scientists observed a hole in the ozone layer above Antarctica.

Reading Practice 3

Bạn hãy dùng *will* + một động từ trong bảng để điền vào mỗi câu.

have	cause	be	have
be	rise	have	be

1. Scientists predict that there major changes in the climate during the next century.
2. Farmers trouble producing good crops.
3. In warm regions the weather too dry.
4. This a large decrease in agricultural production.

5. Coastal water higher temperatures.
6. Many coastal cities underwater.
7. This a serious effect on agriculture.
8. Which, in turn, the level of the oceans by one to two meters.

Reading Practice 4

Bạn hãy điền giới từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống.

Something very serious is happening (1) the Earth. It is becoming warmer. This will have a serious effect (2) agriculture. (3) warm regions the weather will be very dry. The amount (4) water could decrease by 50 percent. This would cause a decrease (5) agricultural production. World temperature could increase from 1.5 (6) 5.6 degrees Celsius (7) the middle (8) the twenty-first century. This could cause the great sheets (9) ice in the Arctic and Antarctic regions to melt and raise the level (10) the oceans (11) one (12) two meters. Many coastal cities would be underwater.

SUMMARY

Tới lúc này bạn hãy đọc tất cả những nội dung ghi trong phần tóm tắt dưới đây. Nếu chưa nắm vững phần nào bạn hãy đọc lại phần đó và làm các bài tập cho đến khi bạn đạt được các mục đích của bài học.

1. Dùng động từ tương lai đơn Will + V(inf.) để diễn đạt hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai ở dạng khẳng định, phủ định và nghi vấn.

I'll go to work tomorrow.

Will you go to work tomorrow?

I won't go to work tomorrow.

2. Dùng will trong câu điều kiện có thực

If it rains, we won't go out.

3. Dùng trạng từ có tận cùng ly được cấu tạo từ tính từ.

Careful - carefully

Angry - angrily

Cold - coldly

He is a careful driver.

He always drives more carefully at night.

SELF-TEST

Sau khi học xong Unit 4 bạn hãy làm bài kiểm tra sau để xem mình đã nắm vững bài hay chưa. Thời gian tối đa để hoàn thành bài tự kiểm tra này là 120 phút. Điểm số dành cho mỗi câu hỏi được ghi trong ngoặc ở đầu câu. Nếu trả lời đúng tất cả bạn có thể chuyển sang học tiếp Unit 5.

Chú ý: Bạn cần tự trả lời tất cả các câu hỏi trước khi xem “Key to Self-test.”

I. Complete these sentences using the following phrases. (20 points)

don't drink	go out in the rain	don't sleep	don't eat
cold	the President dies	there is a revolution	
hot	meet her again	don't get a place at university	

1. If you you'll get thin.
2. If you you'll get tired.
3. If you you'll get thirsty.
4. If you you'll get wet.
5. If it's I'll warm myself.
6. If I I'll be very happy.
7. If I I'll be unhappy.
8. If it will be very bad for the country.
9. If it will be very good for them.
10. If it's I'll go swimming.

II. Put the following adjectives into adverbs. (15 points)

Example: bad → badly

1. quiet:
2. nice:
3. warm:
4. great:
5. extreme:
6. sincere:
7. hungry:
8. lazy:
9. real:
10. terrible:
11. complete:
12. careful:
13. angry:

14. happy:.....

15. comfortable:.....

III. Choose the right word to put in the blanks. (10 points)

1. She's very with me. (angry /angrily)
2. He doesn't think his mother drives very (good /well)
3. His father spoke to him (angry / angrily)
4. His sister has got a..... face. (nice /nicely)
5. My brother plays the piano very (bad /badly)
6. It's dark. (terrible /terribly)
7. My house is small but (comfortable /comfortably)
8. She is looking at me (cold /coldly)
9. Our students speak French. (bad / badly)
10. They speak French (bad /badly)

IV. Choose the suitable forms of the verbs to complete the sentences. (15 points)

1. Can you help me? Sorry, not just now. I (work)
2. What does she do? I'm not sure. I think she in a bank! (work)
3. We to Canada on holiday nearly every summer. (go)
4. But next summer we to Scotland. (go)
5. I Matthew yesterday. He sends you his love. (see)
6. I three good films this week. (see)
7. She her boy friend for four weeks, and they're already talking about getting married. (know)
8. you ever to change your job? (want)
9. If you help I what I can. (need / do)
10. Your horoscope says that this a difficult week for you. You a talk dark stranger. He all your money. (be/ meet / take)

V. Use the following sets of words and phrases to write complete sentences. (10 points)

1. It/ important/ her/ she/doctor/ now.

.....
2. If/ no taxis/ he/ walk/ there.

.....
3. Saw/ him/ walk/ alone/ park.

.....
4. Money/ not important/ as friendship.

.....
5. Used/ stay/ her uncle's/ when/ a child.

.....
6. She/ seventeen/ old/ Saturday.

.....
7. He/ not well/ so/ had/ see doctor.

.....
8. She/ cook/ good/ than/ my wife.

.....
9. I/ going/ London/ few days/ next month.

.....
10. She/ tell him/ meeting/ if/ see/ tomorrow.

VI. Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage. Use one of these words in the box. (15 points)

party and	presents	time
wearing bring	them	to
age in	lot	games
expecting eat	will	

It is January 10th. Today Jane is seventeen years of(1). She is(2) a pretty new dress. It is blue(3) white. Jane is having a(4) today and she is(5) all her friends to come. They are going to arrive(6) a short time. They are going to(7) many beautiful(8) with(9). Jane's mother has prepared a(10) of nice things to(11) and drink. The young people are going to play(12), sing,dance and listen(13) music. They(14) have a wonderful(15) together.

VII. A. Read the passage then answer the questions. (15 points)

Fred is about to jump across the stream. Another soldier has just fallen into it. Fred does not want to jump. He is afraid he will fall into it, too. He will get very wet if he does. Fred will be very happy when all this is over.

1. What is Fred about to do?

.....

2. What has just happened?

.....

3. Why doesn't Fred want to jump?

.....

B. Translate the passage into Vietnamese.

.....
.....
.....
.....

KEY TO DIALOGUE

Dialogue Practice 1

1. I'll be all right.
2. Where will you sleep?
3. You'll get lost.
4. No, I won't.
5. You won't get lifts.
6. Yes, I will.
7. What will you do for money?
8. I'll take money with me.
9. If I need money I'll find jobs.
10. Are you sure you'll be all right?
11. I'll be all right.

Dialogue Practice 2

1. I'm going to hitchhike round the world.
2. No, it isn't. I'll be all right.

3. Yes, I will.
4. Yes, I will.
5. I'll take money with me.
6. If I need money I'll find jobs.
7. Yes, I will.

Dialogue Practice 3

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. A: I'm going to be a racing driver. | 2. A: I'm going to be a doctor. |
| B: Oh. That's very dangerous. | B: You'll have to study for seven years. |
| A: No, it isn't. I'll be all right. | A: Yes, I know. I don't mind. |
| B: You'll crash. You'll get killed. | B: You won't finish your studies. |
| A: No, I won't. | A: Yes, I will. |
| B: You won't find a job. | B: You'll have a really hard life. |
| A: Yes. I will. I am a good driver. | A: Yes, but it'll be interesting. |
| B: Well, are you sure you'll be all right? B: You'll have to work very long hours. | |
| A: Of course I'll be all right. | A: Yes, I know. I don't mind. |
| | B: OK, if that's what you want. |

KEY TO STRUCTURE

Structure Practice 1

1. If you press button A, you'll get a surprise.
2. If you press level B, you'll get an electric shock.
3. If you pull level C, you'll get a hamburger.
4. If you turn handle D, you'll get a flower.
5. If you turn handle E, you'll hear music.
6. If you push button F, you'll get a hot drink.

Structure Practice 2

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Press; will get | 6. open; will see |
| 2. have; will come | 7. will be; arrive |
| 3. rains; will have | 8. eat; will have |
| 4. will tell; need | 9. get; will take |
| 5. will come; are | 10. will sell; go |

Structure Practice 3

- | | |
|-----------|--------|
| 1. hungry | 6. wet |
|-----------|--------|

- | | |
|------------|----------|
| 2. fat | 7. cold |
| 3. thirsty | 8. dark |
| 4. drunk | 9. older |
| 5. tired | |

KEY TO LISTENING

Tapescript

A.

1. If you take my records again there's going to be trouble. (angry)
2. Good mornings. Are there any letters for me? (sleepily)
3. I'm sorry. I can't help you. (coldly)
4. Don't play with those. (loudly)
5. What a lovely surprised flowers. That is nice (happily)
6. All right. Mary, just wait there for a minute and I'll see what I can do for you. (kindly)

B.

1. The trouble with this government is that they think they know what's happening. (fast)
2. Can you understand what I'm saying? Please speak more slowly. (slowly)
3. Erm, excuse me, erm, do you mind if I sit here? (shyly)
4. There's no need to shout. I'm not deaf. (quickly)
5. Oh dear, it's terrible. He doesn't love me any more. (unhappy)

Listening Practice 1

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 1. angry | 6. terribly |
| 2. angrily | 7. loud |
| 3. well | 8. coldly |
| 4. nice | 9. good |
| 5. badly | 10. well |

Listening Practice 2

1. listen ... carefully
2. Come quickly
3. know ... well
4. work hard
5. sleep well
6. win easily

7. Think carefully
8. explain ... clearly
9. are ... angry
10. repeat ... slowly

KEY TO READING

1. A special place where plants are grown.
2. An increase in carbon dioxide in the atmosphere prevents heat from escaping, which warms the Earth.
3. Because the effect is the same as a greenhouse.
4. Carbon dioxide, ozone, water vapor.
5. The harmful light that comes from the sun.

Reading Practice 1

- | | | |
|-----------------|------------|-------------------------|
| 1. serious | 4. coastal | 7. ozone |
| 2. regions | 5. escapes | 8. encourage, occurring |
| 3. temperatures | 6. absorb | |

Reading Practice 2

- | | | |
|------|-------|-----|
| 1. T | 4. NI | 7.T |
| 2. T | 5. NI | |
| 3. F | 6.T | |

Reading Practice 3

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. will be | 5. will have |
| 2. will have | 6. would be |
| 3. will be | 7. will have |
| 4. would cause | 8. would raise |

Reading Practice 4

1. to
2. on
3. in
4. of
5. in
6. to
7. in

8. of

9. of

10. of

11. by

12. to

KEY TO SELF-TEST

I.

1. don't eat
2. don't sleep
3. don't drink
4. go out in the rain
5. is cold
6. meet her again
7. don't get a place at the university
8. the president dies
9. there is a revolution
10. is hot

II.

1. quietly
2. nicely
3. warmly
4. greatly
5. extremely
6. sincerely
7. hungrily
8. lazily
9. really
10. terribly
11. completely
12. carefully
13. angrily

14. happily
15. comfortably

III.

- | | |
|------------|----------------|
| 1. angry | 6. terribly |
| 2. well | 7. comfortable |
| 3. angrily | 8. coldly |
| 4. nice | 9. bad |
| 5. badly | 10. badly |

IV.

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| 1. am working | 6. 've (have) seen |
| 2. works | 7. has known. |
| 3. go | 8. have wanted |
| 4. 're (are) going | 9. need; 'll (will) do |
| 5. saw | 10. 'll (will) be; 'll (will) meet, 'll (will) take. |

V.

1. It's important for her to see the doctor now.
2. If there are no taxis he will have to walk there.
3. I saw him walking alone in the park.
4. Money is not as important as friendship.
5. She used to stay at her uncle's house when she was a child.
6. She will be seventeen years old on Saturday.
7. He was not very well enough, so he had to see the doctor.
8. She cooks better than my wife does.
9. I am going to London for a few days next month.
10. She'll tell him about the meeting if she sees him tomorrow.

VI.

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1. age | 6. in | 11. eat |
| 2. wearing | 7. bring | 12. games |
| 3. and | 8. presents | 13. to |
| 4. party | 9. them | 14. will |
| 5. expecting | 10. lot | 15. time |

VII.

A.

1. Fred is about to jump across the stream.
2. Another soldier has just fallen into it.(or into the stream).
3. He doesn't want to jump because he is afraid he will fall into it/ into the stream .

B.

Fred định nhảy qua con suối. Một anh lính khác vừa mới rót xuông suối. Fred không muốn nhảy. Anh sợ anh cũng sẽ rớt xuông suối. Anh sẽ bị ướt nếu anh bị rơi. Fred sẽ rất vui khi mọi việc kết thúc.

VOCABULARY

absorb [ə'bɔ:sə:b]	v hút, hấp thụ
agriculture [ə'ægrɪkltʊər]	n nông nghiệp
Antarctic [æn'trɪktɪk]	n Nam Cực
Arctic ['l:ktɪk]	n Bắc Cực
atmosphere ['ætmfə:sfɪər]	n tầng khí quyển
button ['bʌtn]	n núm bấm (chuông điện)
create [kri:'eit]	v tạo ra, làm ra, sáng tạo
destruction [dɪstrʊkʃn]	n sự phá huỷ, tàn phá
effect [ɪ'fekt]	n ảnh hưởng, kết quả
encourage [ɪn'kɔridʒ]	v khuyến khích, khích lệ
equator [ɪ'kweɪtər]	n đường xích đạo
handle ['hændl]	n cán, tay cầm
harmful ['hæ:mfl]	adj tổn hại, làm hại
heat energy [hi:t]	n nhiệt năng
horoscope ['hɔrəsko:p]	n tử vi, lá số tử vi
ice sheet [ɔ:i:t]	n dải băng
layer ['leɪər]	n tầng lớp
level ['levl]	n mực, mức
lever ['li:vər]	n cái đòn bẩy, cần đẩy
major ['meidʒər]	adj đa số, đáng kể, chính yếu
ozone ['ouzən]	n khí ô zôn
predict [pri'dikt]	v nói trước, đoán trước

Unit 4: Are you sure you'll be all right?

prevent [pri'vent]	v ngăn trã, ngăn ngừa
production [prə'dʌkʃn]	n sản phẩm
raise [reɪz]	v nâng lên, tăng cường
remain [ri'meɪn]	v,n ở lại, còn lại, vẫn, phần còn lại
cancer ['kænsə]	n ung thư
vapour/ vapor ['veipə]	n,v hơi (nước), dạng khí, bốc hơi

UNIT 5. I WAS GETTING READY TO COME HOME...

INTRODUCTION

Bây giờ bạn bắt đầu học Bài 5. Trong bài này, bạn sẽ học cách đặt câu sử dụng thì quá khứ tiếp diễn ở các câu khẳng định, phủ định, nghi vấn. Bạn sẽ nhận biết được sự khác biệt về cấu trúc và cách sử dụng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn và quá khứ tiếp diễn.

Bạn cũng sẽ luyện thêm cấu trúc so sánh để thể hiện sự tương đồng và khác biệt. Bạn sẽ được cung cấp phần từ vựng để chỉ những đồ vật và nơi chốn mua sắm. Đồng thời, bạn sẽ được học cách diễn giải những vật chưa biết tên thông qua việc nói về công dụng.

Bây giờ bạn hãy xem phần Mục đích của Bài 5.

UNIT OBJECTIVES

Phần Mục đích bài học giúp bạn biết cụ thể những kiến thức sẽ học trong bài.

Học xong Bài 5 bạn đã có thể:

1. Sử dụng thì quá khứ tiếp diễn ở các câu khẳng định, phủ định và nghi vấn.
2. Biết cách trả lời câu hỏi sử dụng thì quá khứ tiếp diễn.
3. Nắm được ý nghĩa thì quá khứ tiếp diễn, phân biệt các trường hợp sử dụng thì quá khứ đơn với quá khứ tiếp diễn.
4. Sử dụng cấu trúc so sánh (bằng, không bằng ...) để thể hiện sự tương đồng và khác biệt giữa hai đối tượng tương đương.
5. Diễn đạt sự so sánh giữa nhiều đối tượng trong cấu trúc so sánh nhất.
6. Có vốn từ vựng để diễn đạt những đồ vật và những nơi chốn mua sắm.
7. Dùng cấu trúc “for doing something” để nói về công dụng, kết hợp các danh từ chỉ nguyên liệu, các tính từ chỉ chất liệu, kiểu dáng.

5A. DIALOGUE

Bạn hãy nghe bài hội thoại (Unit 5. Dialogue). Đây là đoạn hội thoại giữa hai vợ chồng - Lorna và George. Họ đang ở nhà và nói chuyện với nhau về một ngày làm việc của Lorna. Hãy nghe và nhắc lại theo từng câu mà bạn nghe thấy ba lần.

George: Hello, darling. Did you have a good day?

Unit 5: I was getting ready to come home...

Lorna: Not bad. The usual sort of thing. Meetings, phone calls, letters. You know.

George: Did you see anybody interesting?

Lorna: Well, Chris came into the office this morning. We had a long talk.

George: Oh, yes? What about?

Lorna: Oh, this and that. Things. You know.

George: I see.

Lorna: And then Janet turned up. As usual. Just when I was trying to finish some work.

George: So what did you do?

Lorna: Had lunch with her.

George: Where did you go? Somewhere nice?

Lorna: No, just the pub round the corner. A pie and a pint, you know. Then in the afternoon there was a budget meeting. It went on for hours.

George: Sounds like a boring day. Did anything interesting happen?

Lorna: Don't think so, not really. Can't remember. Oh, yes, one thing. Something rather strange.

George: What?

Lorna: Well, it was this evening. I was getting ready to come home. And the phone rang. So I picked it up. And there was this man...

Hãy chuyển sang phần thực hành hội thoại.

Dialogue Practice 1: The Past Continuous Tense

(Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn)

Ta thấy trong bài có sử dụng một cấu trúc ngữ pháp mới, đó là **Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn**. Cấu trúc của thì này như sau:

S + to be (past) + V-ing (Chủ ngữ + to be (quá khứ) + động từ thêm đuôi ing)

Ví dụ: Động từ **to sing**

Khẳng định Phủ định		Nghi vấn
I was singing	I was not (wasn't) singing	Was I singing?
You were singing	You were not (weren't) singing	Were you singing?
He was singing	He was not (wasn't) singing	Was he singing?

She was singing	She was not (wasn't) singing	Was she singing?
It was singing	It was not (wasn't) singing	Was it singing?
We were singing	We were not (weren't) singing	Were we singing?
You were singing	You were not (weren't) singing	Were you singing?
They were singing	They were not (weren't) singing	Were they singing?

Dưới đây là một số ví dụ với thì quá khứ tiếp diễn.

I was watching TV.

They were not fishing.

Was he reading?

Note: Câu trả lời cho câu hỏi dạng đảo có hai khả năng: Có hoặc Không.

Ví dụ: A: Was he reading?

B: Yes, he was. / No, he wasn't.

ý nghĩa của thì quá khứ tiếp diễn: là để diễn đạt hành động đang diễn ra tại một thời điểm trong quá khứ.

Note: Thời điểm trong quá khứ có thể hiện bằng một con số chỉ thời gian trong quá khứ hay được thể hiện bằng một hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ.

Các trường hợp thường sử dụng thì quá khứ tiếp diễn:

a. **Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn** để diễn tả một hành động đang diễn ra (một sự kiện nền) thì một hành động khác xen vào (hành động xen vào sử dụng **thì quá khứ đơn**). Ta thường sử dụng **Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn** để diễn đạt hành động dài hơn và **Thì quá khứ đơn** để chỉ hành động (sự kiện) ngắn hơn.

Ví dụ: I was watching TV when the phone rang.

(Tôi đang xem ti vi thì chuông điện thoại reo.)

I was watching TV

X-----

↓

the phone rang

b. **Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn** để diễn đạt hai hay nhiều hành động cùng diễn ra song song tại một thái điểm trong quá khứ (hai hành động cùng dùng **thì quá khứ tiếp diễn**).

Ví dụ: Was he reading while you were cooking?

(Có phải anh ấy đang đọc sách trong khi bạn đang nấu nồi không?)

He was reading

you were cooking

Bây giờ bạn hãy nhìn lại bài hội thoại và viết hai câu sử dụng cấu trúc quá khứ tiếp diễn, lấy ý từ bài hội thoại. Sau đó dịch hai câu đó sang tiếng Việt.

1.

.....

2.

.....

Dialogue Practice 2:

Sau khi làm xong bài luyện 1, bạn hãy trả lời các câu hỏi sau.

1. Who came into the office this morning?

.....

2. What was Lorna doing when Janet turned up?

.....

3. Where did they have lunch?

.....

4. Was there a budget meeting in the morning?

.....

5. What happened when she was getting ready to come home?

.....

5B. STRUCTURE

Structure Practice 1: Comparisons (Similarities)

Sự so sánh (Tương đồng)

Trong các bài trước, bạn đã được giới thiệu và làm luyện một số bài với cấu trúc so sánh tính từ và trạng từ để diễn đạt sự giống nhau và khác nhau. Trong bài này bạn sẽ được luyện sử dụng các cấu trúc đó nhiều hơn. Để bài luyện đạt kết quả tốt hơn, trước tiên bạn có thể xem lại phần lý thuyết trong các bài đó nếu cảm thấy chưa nhớ rõ.

Sau đây là phần tổng kết các cấu trúc thể hiện sự giống nhau mà bạn thường phải sử dụng:

as... as

the same (noun/ adjective) as

So V Subject (Sự giống nhau áp dụng với câu khẳng định)

Neither V Subject (Sự giống nhau áp dụng với câu phủ định)

Nor V Subject (Sự giống nhau áp dụng với câu phủ định)

Ví dụ: He is probably as tall as the king.

His clothes are the same as yours.

She was there. So was I.

She can't dance. Neither / Nor can I.

Bây giờ bạn hãy đặt các câu so sánh giữa hai nhân vật - Durer và nhà vua - cho thấy sự giống nhau giữa họ.

1. Durer has got / beard / and / king.
2. Durer / have not got / earrings on / and / has / king.
3. The king / in a room / and / is Durer.
4. The king can speak Latin / and / Durer.
5. The king is / as tall / Durer.
6. Durer has got / same eyes / king.
7. Durer died / in / sixteenth century / and / king.
8. Durer / did not go / Italy / before 1480 / and / king.
9. Durer looks / as intelligent / king.
10. Durer's clothes / heavy and so are / king's.

Structure Practice 2: Comparisons (Differences)

Sự so sánh (Khác biệt)

Những cấu trúc chỉ sự khác nhau thường sử dụng là:

not as...	as
short adj + ER	than
more long adj	than
less long adj	than
different	from

Ví dụ: He does not look as happy as them.

Her coat is different from mine.

She looks younger than her age.

The pictures in this room are more expensive than those in others.

He looks less worried than his wife.

Bạn hãy hoàn thành các câu so sánh giữa hai nhân vật - Duder và ông vua - cho thấy sự giống và khác nhau giữa họ.

1. Duder / fair / than / king.
2. The king's clothes / look / expensive / than / Durer's.
3. The king's nose / same / Durer's.
4. Durer / probably as tall / king.
5. Do you think / king / could paint / as / well / Durer?
6. The king / not look / as happy / Durer.
7. The king's hair / not as long / Durer's.
8. Durer's hat / more colourful / king's.
9. Durer / look less worried / king.
10. The king / look less happy / Durer.

Structure Practice 3: Word explanation

Khi chúng ta không biết tên một đồ vật bằng tiếng Anh, có thể diễn giải nghĩa đồ vật đó để cho người khác hiểu được, sử dụng cấu trúc: **for doing something**.

Có thể sử dụng những từ vựng sau:

a thing	a tool	stuff	material
a machine	liquid		powder

Ví dụ: a machine for making holes: a drill

some stuff for putting pieces of paper together: glue

some liquid for cleaning windows: window-cleansing liquid

Ngoài ra còn có thể dùng các tính từ chỉ chất liệu, kiểu dáng để có thể miêu tả rõ hơn vật mình muốn diễn giải.

Ví dụ: shape: square, round, oval, cubic, pyramid...

material: metal, nylon, tin, copper, woollen...

Unit 5: I was getting ready to come home...

Bây giờ bạn hãy nối các cụm từ với các từ đã cho sao cho phù hợp.

1. some powder for washing clothes	a. alarm clock
2. a nylon thing for brushing your nails	b. vacuum cleaner
3. a rectangular leather thing for keeping money	c. washing powder
4. a machine for pumping the air into the tyre	d. wallet
5. a thing for alarming you in the morning	e. furniture polish
6. some material for polishing furniture	f. nail brush
7. a machine for cleaning the floor	g. pump

Vocabulary Practice 1

Dưới đây giới thiệu một số nơi chốn bạn có thể đi mua hàng. Bạn hãy đọc mỗi từ ba lượt và tra nghĩa những từ mà bạn chưa biết.

clothes/ dress shop	greengrocer's	grocer's	chemist's
supermarket	market	post office	bookshop
shoe shop	garage	baker's	

Tiếp theo là những vật mà bạn có thể mua tại những nơi đó. Bạn cũng hãy đọc các từ ba lượt và tra nghĩa những từ còn chưa biết.

meat	bread	vegetables	sugar
shoes	soap	books	clothes
writing paper	petrol	phone cards	aspirins

Sau khi nắm vững nghĩa tất cả các từ, bạn hãy làm bài tập dưới đây bằng cách gạch chân dưới cụm từ chỉ nơi chốn phù hợp với mặt hàng ta có thể mua.

Ví dụ: We can buy sugar at a grocer's / in a bookshop.

→ We can buy sugar at a grocer's.

1. We can buy vegetables at a chemist's / in a supermarket.
2. We can buy clothes at a greengrocer's / in a dress shop.
3. We can buy soap in a post office / in a market.
4. We can buy phone cards at a baker's / in a post office.
5. We can buy writing paper at a garage / in a bookshop.

Vocabulary Practice 2

Bạn hãy làm bài tập tiếp theo bằng cách hoàn thành câu sử dụng các từ gợi ý dưới đây.

grocer's	chemist's	market
bookshop	post office	garage

Ví dụ: You can buy sugar at a grocer's.

1. You can buy meat
2. You buy bread
3. You can usually buy books
4. You can buy telephone sets
5. You can buy aspirins
6. You can buy petrol

5C. LISTENING

Listening Practice 1

Trước tiên, hãy đọc và xác định nghĩa của những từ chỉ phương tiện giao thông sau:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------|
| A. pram | F. bicycle |
| B. car | G. ship |
| C. motorbike | H. tank |
| D. double-decker bus | I. lorry |
| E. supersonic airliner/ plane | J. train |

Trong phần 5B, bạn đã nắm vững và đặt được các câu diễn đạt sự giống nhau và khác nhau giữa hai đối tượng tương đương. Khi có nhiều đối tượng hơn như trong trường hợp này ta có thể sử dụng cấu trúc so sánh nhất.

The short adj + EST

The MOST long adj

Ví dụ: The car isn't the heaviest. (trường hợp tính từ ngắn)

Is the plane the most expensive of all? (trường hợp tính từ dài)

Bây giờ bạn hãy thử xác định xem những câu sau đây đúng hay sai bằng cách gạch chân đáp án đúng.

1. The pram has got the most wheels. T / F
2. The bicycle has got the fewest wheels. T / F
3. The bus can carry the most passengers. T / F
4. The car can carry the fewest people. T / F

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------|
| 5. The plane is the fastest. | T / F |
| 6. The lorry is the lightest. | T / F |
| 7. The motorbike isn't the fastest. | T / F |
| 8. The ship is the most expensive. | T / F |

Listening Practice 2

Bây giờ bạn hãy lắng nghe bài nghe (Unit 5. Listening) và điền vào bảng sau. Bài nghe được chia làm 6 đoạn. Lần đầu bạn nghe qua một lượt để hiểu chung về bài nghe. Lần thứ hai bạn hãy nghe từng đoạn một. Nếu chưa tìm được thông tin cần thiết bạn có thể nghe đi nghe lại từng đoạn hoặc nghe từng câu. Lần cuối bạn nghe lại cả bài.

Vehicle A B C D E F						
Number of wheels						
How many passengers does it carry?						
Top speed (in kph)						
Weight (in kilos)						
Price (in pounds)						
Name						

Listening Practice 3

Sau khi hoàn thành bài tập 2, bạn hãy lựa chọn từ để đặt các câu thực về các phương tiện giao thông để cập trong bài nghe, sử dụng những gợi ý.

1. Buses have got more wheels than (prams / trains).
2. The motorbike hasn't got as many wheels as the (pram / bicycle).
3. The plane can carry far more people than the (bus / ship).
4. Cars (can / can't) carry as many people as buses.
5. (The plane / the bus) is much faster than the motorbike.
6. The car is (much / a bit) heavier than the pram.
7. The car (costs / doesn't cost) more than the motorbike.
8. (The supersonic / the bus) can carry the most.
9. The pram costs (much / -) less than the bicycle.
10. The (plane / bus) is the fastest.

5D. READING

Bạn hãy đọc kỹ đoạn văn sau.

Helen could not decide which of the boys she liked best. Both of them were old friends of hers, and they both had nice personalities. Rob was similar to her, perhaps. He had the same interests as her, and they enjoyed doing things together. She was a bit older than him, but that was not important.

Rob was very grown-up and mature, and much more self-confident than John. She was very fond of him, and she knew that he loved her. Only she was not sure that he loved her as much as John.

John was very different from her - he was not really like anybody else she had ever met - and that made him more interesting, in a way. He had travelled more than her, and could talk for hours about places that she had never seen. He was better-looking than Rob, too - taller and stronger. And his eyes were the same colour as the sea on a summer day. But John was strange. She never quite knew what he was thinking, and he sometimes did unexpected things that worried her.

Bây giờ hãy xác định những câu sau đúng hay sai bằng việc viết vào đầu câu: T (đúng) hoặc F (sai).

- ... 1. Helen could decide which of the boys she liked best.
- ... 2. Both John and Rob were Helen's old friends.
- ... 3. John had the same interests as her.
- ... 4. Helen was fond of Rob.
- ... 5. She was sure that Rob loved her as much as John.
- ... 6. John was as tall and strong as Rob.
- ... 7. Rob was better-looking than John.
- ... 8. Helen travelled more than John.
- ... 9. She never quite knew what John was thinking.
- ... 10. Rob sometimes did unexpected things that worried her.

Reading Practice 1

Hãy sửa các câu sai trong các câu trên (Lưu ý: có 7 câu sai).

Ví dụ: 1. Helen could not decide which of the boys she liked best.

2.

- 3.....
- 4.....
- 5.....
- 6.....
- 7.....

Reading Practice 2

Hãy dịch đoạn văn đầu tiên của bài sang tiếng Việt “John was very different ... that worried her”.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Bạn hãy kiểm tra lại câu trả lời của bạn trong phần Key to Reading, sau đó đọc to và trôi chảy từng câu trong bài đọc.

Bạn đã học xong các cấu trúc ngữ pháp và làm bài tập của Unit 5. Bạn có thể nghỉ giải lao. Sau đó hãy đọc phần Summary và xem lại phần Unit objectives để ôn lại toàn bài. Tiếp theo bạn hãy làm bài Self-test.

SUMMARY

Đến đây bạn đã học được tất cả những nội dung ghi trong phần Tóm tắt bên dưới. Bạn hãy đọc thật kỹ. Nếu chưa nắm vững phần nào, bạn hãy đọc lại phần đó và làm các bài tập cho đến khi bạn đạt được mục đích của bài học.

Trong Unit 5 bạn đã học những vấn đề sau:

1. Câu sử dụng cấu trúc quá khứ tiếp diễn để diễn đạt hành động đang diễn ra tại một thái điểm trong quá khứ.

Were they studying at 10 yesterday morning?

When the phone rang, I was sleeping.

2. Phân biệt trường hợp sử dụng thì quá khứ tiếp diễn (để diễn đạt hành động diễn ra tại một thái điểm trong quá khứ) với trường hợp sử dụng thì quá khứ đơn (để chỉ hành động xen vào trong khi hành động kia đang diễn ra).

What were you doing at 8 p.m yesterday?

What were you doing when I phoned?

3. Sử dụng cấu trúc so sánh để thể hiện sự tương đồng và khác biệt.

A car can run faster than a mouse.

Maths is less interesting than literature.

4. Vốn từ vựng để diễn đạt những vật dụng hàng ngày và những nơi chốn có thể mua chúng.

You can buy petrol at the garage.

You can buy aspirins at the chemist's.

5. Dùng cấu trúc “for doing something” để diễn đạt chức năng của một vật gì đó khi ta không biết tên của đồ vật đó.

I'd like things for keeping hands warm.

I'd like a thing for taking pictures.

6. Kết hợp các danh từ chỉ loại nguyên liệu, các tính từ chỉ chất liệu, kiểu dáng với cấu trúc “for doing something” để diễn giải về những đồ vật bạn chưa biết tên.

A wallet: a rectangular leather thing for keeping money.

SELF-TEST

Thời gian tối đa để hoàn thành bài tự kiểm tra này là 100 phút. Điểm số dành cho mỗi câu hỏi được ghi trong ngoặc ở đầu mỗi câu hỏi. Nếu trả lời đúng tất cả các câu hỏi bạn có thể chuyển sang học tiếp Unit 6.

Chú ý: Bạn cần tự trả lời tất cả các câu hỏi trước khi xem “Key to Self-test”.

I. Read the following text then answer the questions. (20 points)

Dear Kumiko,

I'm sorry I didn't come and see you today, but things have been awful. I didn't hear my alarm clock, so I got up late. Then, just as I was running out of the house, I fell and hurt my knee. I had to go to the hospital and wait a very long time. Three people who had been in a serious car crash came in while I was waiting and, of course, they had to go straight in before me. The doctor says nothing is broken, but I mustn't stand up much for the next two or three weeks, which is not very easy! This is why I am writing this note, which Peter is delivering for me. I will let you know when I am better and perhaps you can come round for a meal.

I wonder if you could post me the book I lent you in November. I need it for some work I am trying to do while I can't move around much. Do you remember which one I'm talking about? You borrowed it when you were writing that paper for your English class. If you could post it tomorrow or on Wednesday I will get it by Friday.

I hope everything is going well and that the person who was making life difficult for you at work has realised how silly she's being.

Love,

Angela

A. Questions

1. Why did Angela get up late?

.....

2. What happened when she was running out of the house?

.....

3. What was she doing when three people came into the hospital?

.....

4. What does she want Komiko to do with the book?

.....

5. When did Komiko borrow it?

.....

B. Translate the first paragraph into Vietnamese. (I'm sorry... for a meal)

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

II. Fill in the blanks, using words or phrases in the dialogue in 5A. (15 points)

Ann: Hello, darling. (1) a nice day?

Pat: So-so. John came in this morning, and said he (2) to talk to me.

Ann: What (3)?

Pat: Oh, his marriage, as (4). We (5) lunch together, and we had a long (6), and he said he felt better.

Ann: Where (7) have lunch? Somewhere (8)?

Pat: No, we went to the pub round the (9). I just had a beer and a sandwich. Then in the afternoon Alice phoned and talked (10) hours. Just (11) I was (12) to do some (13).

Ann: I am sorry. It (14) like a difficult day.

Pat: Well, it was quite interesting, but I (15) get much work done.

III. Fill in the blanks using verbs in the right form. (15 points)

1. I have got blue eyes, and so my mother.
2. I haven't got a car, and neither my husband.
3. English is a difficult language, and so Russian.
4. Today's weather isn't very nice, and neither yesterday's.
5. She can swim very well, and so her sister.
6. I can't dance very well, and neither my boyfriend.
7. Alice likes riding, and so Phil.
8. Marie doesn't speak English, and neither Tom.
9. Shakespeare lived in the 17th century, and so Milton.
10. We didn't go to the meeting, and neither most of the other people.

IV. Complete the sentences, using “as” and “than”. (10 points)

1. A diamond is harder iron.
2. Wales is not as big Scotland.
3. I work in the same office my brother.
4. On average, women live longer men.
5. Cheese has more calories bread.
6. England is not nearly as big New Zealand.
7. She plays much better I do.
8. Your eyes are almost the same colour mine.
9. I think football is far more interesting tennis.
10. Eat much you like.

V. Complete the sentences using the given words in the suitable form (past simple or past continuous). (20 points)

1. When I the house, I some old letters. (*clean; find*)
2. The doorbell while I a bath. (*ring; have*)
3. We an accident when we back from holiday. (*see; come*)

4. When I looked out of the window, I that it
(realise; rain)
5. I my wife when we Washington. (meet; live)
6. I at a garage because the car badly (stop; run)
7. I suddenly of you while I (think; wash up)
8. She to sleep while I her about my holidays. (go; tell)
9. When I up, water through the ceiling. (look; come)
10. How fast you when the accident
(drive; happen)?

KEY TO DIALOGUE

Dialogue Practice 1

1. Janet turned up just when I was trying to finish some work.
Janet đến khi em đang có gắng hoàn thành một số việc.
2. I was getting ready to come home when the phone rang.
Em đang sửa soạn để về nhà thì chuông điện thoại reo.

Dialogue Practice 2

- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| 1. Janet. | 2. She was trying to finish some work. |
| 3. In a pub. | 4. No, there was not. |
| 5. The phone rang. | |

KEY TO STRUCTURE

Structure Practice 1

1. Durer has got a beard, and so has the king.
2. Durer hasn't got earrings on, and neither has the king.
3. The king is in a room, and so is Durer.
4. The king can speak Latin, and so can Durer.
5. The king is as tall as Durer.
6. Durer has got the same eyes as the king.
7. Durer died in the sixteenth century, and so did the king.
8. Durer didn't go to Italy before 1480, and nor did the king.
9. Durer looks as intelligent as the king.
10. Durer's clothes are heavy, so are the king's.

Structure Practice 2

1. Duder is fairer than the king.
2. The king's clothes look more expensive than Durer's.
3. The king's nose is the same as Durer's.
4. Durer was probably as tall as the king.
5. Do you think the king could paint as well as Durer?
6. The king doesn't look as happy as Durer.
7. The king's hair isn't as long as Durer's.
8. Durer's hat is more colourful than the king's.
9. Durer looks less worried than the king.
10. The king looks less happy than Durer.

Structure Practice 3

1c 2f	3d	4g
5a 6e	7b	

Vocabulary Practice 1

1. We can buy vegetables in a supermarket.
2. We can buy clothes in a dress shop.
3. We can buy soap in a market.
4. We can buy phonecards in a post office.
5. We can buy writing paper in a bookshop.

Vocabulary Practice 2

1. You can buy meat at the market.
2. You buy bread at the baker's.
3. You can usually buy books in a bookshop.
4. You can buy telephone sets in a post office.
5. You can buy aspirins at the chemist's.
6. You can buy petrol at a garage.

KEY TO LISTENING

Tapescript

- A. It's got four wheels, and usually carries one person, but it can carry two. Its top speed's around six kilometres an hour, and it weighs about 15 kilos. It costs 185 pounds.

Unit 5: I was getting ready to come home...

- B. This vehicle costs about 7,000 pounds. It can go at up to 160 kph, and can carry four people in comfort. It weighs 695 kilos when it's empty. There are four wheels.
- C. These two-wheeled vehicles are very popular with teenagers. They are fast, but much less safe than vehicles A or B. This model has a maximum speed of 240 kph, and weighs 203 kilos. It can carry one or two people, and costs 4,893 pounds.
- D. This vehicle, which costs 91,000 pounds, is commonly used for public transport. It has two decks, or floors, and can carry 72 people when full. Its maximum speed is 110 kilometres an hour, but it doesn't usually go faster than 80. It has six wheels, and weighs 9,000 kilos.
- E. This vehicle was built by two countries working in collaboration. It travels at 2,160 kph - faster than sound - carrying a maximum load of 100 people. When it is fully loaded with passengers and fuel, it weighs 175,000 kilograms. It has ten wheels. Each of these vehicles costs hundreds of millions of pounds to produce - it's impossible to say exactly how much.
- F. How many wheels?
- Two.
- What does it weigh?
- Thirteen and a half kilos.
- How much does it cost?
- 195 pounds.
- How many people can it carry?
- Just one.
- Top speed?
- It depends. For most people, perhaps about 25 kph.

Listening Practice 1

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. F | 2. T | 3. F | 4. F |
| 5. T | 6. F | 7. T | 8. F |

Listening Practice 2

Vehicle A B C D E F						
Number of wheels	4	4	2	6	10	2
How many 1-2 4 1-2 passengers does it carry?	72				100	1
Top speed (in kph)	6	160	240	110	2,160	25
Weight (in kilos)	15	695	203	9.000	175.000	13.5

Price (in pounds)	185	7,000	4,893	91,000	some hundred thousand	195
Name pram		car motor- double-decker bus	bike		plane bicycle	

Listening Practice 3

1. Buses have got more wheels than prams.
2. The motorbike hasn't got as many wheels as the pram.
3. The plane can carry far more people than the bus.
4. Cars can't carry as many people as buses.
5. The plane is much faster than the motorbike.
6. The car is much heavier than the pram.
7. The car costs more than the motorbike.
8. The supersonic can carry the most.
9. The pram costs less than the bicycle.
10. The plane is the fastest.

KEY TO READING

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. F | 2. T | 3. F | 4. T | 5. F |
| 6. F | 7. F | 8. F | 9. T | 10. F |

Reading Practice 1

1. Helen could not decide which of the boys she liked best.
2. Rob had the same interests as her.
3. She was not sure that Rob loved her as much as John.
4. John was taller and stronger than Rob.
5. Rob wasn't better-looking than John.
6. John travelled more than Helen.
7. John sometimes did unexpected things that worried her.

Reading Practice 2

John rất khác với cô - anh ấy không giống với bất kỳ ai mà cô đã gặp - và điều đó khiến anh ta thú vị hơn, theo một khía cạnh nào đấy. Anh ấy đã đi du lịch nhiều hơn cô, và có thể nói chuyện hàng giờ về những nơi mà cô chưa từng bao giờ nhìn thấy. Anh ấy trông cũng ưa nhìn hơn Rob - cao hơn và khoẻ mạnh hơn. Và màu mắt anh ấy giống màu nước biển ngày hè. Nhưng John cũng rất lạ. Cô không bao giờ biết chắc anh ấy đang nghĩ gì, và đôi khi anh ấy làm những việc không ngờ làm cho cô lo lắng.

KEY TO SELF-TEST

I. A.

1. Because she didn't hear her alarm clock.
2. She fell and hurt her knee.
3. She was waiting.
4. She wants Komiko to post her the book.
5. When she was writing a paper for her English class.

B. Tôi xin lỗi tôi đã không đến gặp bạn ngày hôm nay, nhưng mọi việc đã rất tồi tệ. Tôi không nghe thấy chuông đồng hồ báo thức, nên tôi đã dậy muộn. Rồi ngay khi tôi đang chạy ra khỏi nhà, tôi bị ngã và bị đau đầu gối. Tôi phải đi đến bệnh viện và đợi rất lâu. Có ba người bị một vụ đâm ô tô nghiêm trọng, đã vào viện trong khi tôi đang đợi và, tất nhiên là họ phải vào ngay trước tôi. Bác sĩ nói không bị gãy chỗ nào, nhưng tôi không được đứng nhiều trong hai hay ba tuần tiếp theo, việc không phải dễ! Đó là lý do tại sao tôi đang viết lá thư này. Peter sẽ chuyển thư hộ tôi. Tôi sẽ báo cho bạn biết khi nào tôi khỏe hơn và có lẽ sẽ mời bạn đến ăn tối.

II.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------|------------|----------|------------|------------|
| 1. did you have | 2. wanted | 3. about | 4. usual | 5. had |
| 6. talk | 7. did you | 8. nice | 9. corner | 10. for |
| 11. when | 12. trying | 13. work | 14. sounds | 15. didn't |

III.

- | | | | | |
|--------|---------|---------|--------|---------|
| 1. has | 2. has | 3. is | 4. was | 5. can |
| 6. can | 7. does | 8. does | 9. did | 10. did |

IV.

- | | | | | |
|---------|---------|-------|---------|---------------|
| 1. than | 2. as | 3. as | 4. than | 5. than |
| 6. as | 7. than | 8. as | 9. than | 10. as ... as |

V.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. was cleaning ... found | 2. rang ... was having |
| 3. saw ... were coming | 4. realised ... was raining |
| 5. met ... were living | 6. stopped ... was running |
| 7. thought ... was washing up | 8. went ... was telling |
| 9. looked ... was coming | 10. were driving ... happened |

VOCABULARY

(double-decker) bus	n	xe buýt (hai tầng)
budget meeting [bʌdʒɪt]	n	cuộc họp về ngân sách

collaboration [kɔ:læb'ɔ:riən]	n	sự hợp tác
comfort ['kʌmfət]	n	thuận tiện, tiện nghi
commonly ['kɒm'ɒnlɪ]	adv	thông thường
deck [dekk]	n	tầng
diamond ['daɪəmənd]	n	kim cương
fuel [fju:l]	n	nhiên liệu
furniture polish	n	xi đánh bóng đồ đạc
get ready	v	sửa soạn, sẵn sàng
go on (meeting)	v	kéo dài (cuộc họp)
grown-up ['grəʊnʌp]	adj	trưởng thành
impossible [ɪm'pɒsəbl]	adj	không thể, không có khả năng xảy ra
liquid ['lɪkwɪd]	n	chất lỏng
load [ləud]	v,n	tải, tải trọng
material [mə'tɪərɪəl]	n	nguyên liệu
mature [mə'tjʊər]	adj	trưởng thành
maximum ['mæksɪməm]	adj	tối đa
nail brush	n	bàn chải móng tay
pie [paɪ]	n	bánh (hình tròn)
pint (of beer) [paɪnt]	n	vại, cốc (bia)
powder ['paʊdə]	n	bột
pram [præm]	n	xe nôi
public ['pʌblɪk]	adj	công cộng
pump [pʌmp]	n,v	bơm
stuff ['stʌf]	n	chất (bột hoặc chất lỏng)
supersonic airliner	n	máy bay siêu âm
tank [tædžk]	n	xe tăng
teenager ['ti:nɪdʒər]	n	thiếu niên
top speed	n	tốc độ cao nhất
vacuum cleaner ['vækjūm]	n	máy hút bụi
washing powder ['wɔ:ʃɪŋdʒ'paʊdə]	n	bột giặt

UNIT 6. HEAVY SNOW HAS BEEN FALLING...

INTRODUCTION

Bây giờ bạn bắt đầu học Bài 6. Trong bài này, bạn sẽ học cách đặt câu sử dụng thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn ở các thể khẳng định, phủ định, nghi vấn. Bạn sẽ thấy được sự khác biệt về ý nghĩa giữa hai thì hiện tại hoàn thành và hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn. Từ đó, bạn sẽ nhận biết ngữ cảnh sử dụng thì hiện tại hoàn thành và thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn.

Đồng thời bạn sẽ phân biệt kỹ hơn các trường hợp sử dụng động từ nguyên dạng. Ngoài ra bạn còn luyện các câu trong tình huống gợi ý, yêu cầu, đề nghị và những lời đáp lại phù hợp.

Bây giờ bạn hãy xem phần Mục đích của bài.

UNIT OBJECTIVES

Phần Mục đích bài học giúp bạn biết cụ thể những kiến thức sẽ học trong bài.

Học xong Bài 6 bạn đã có thể:

1. Thành lập các câu khẳng định, phủ định, nghi vấn với thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn.
2. Biết cách đặt câu hỏi và trả lời câu hỏi sử dụng cấu trúc hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn.
3. Nắm được ý nghĩa thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn.
4. Phân biệt các trường hợp sử dụng thì hiện tại hoàn thành với hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn.
5. Sử dụng động từ nguyên dạng có “to” và không “to”.
6. Diễn đạt được các câu mang tính gợi ý, yêu cầu và đề nghị và những lời đáp lại phù hợp trong những tình huống đó.

6A. DIALOGUE

Trước tiên bạn hãy nghe đoạn hội thoại sau (Unit 6. Dialogue). Đây là đoạn hội thoại giữa hai người bạn, Ann và Kate. Kate đang chuẩn bị đi chơi và Ann đề nghị giúp bạn. Hãy nghe và nhắc lại theo từng câu mà bạn nghe thấy ba lần.

Jan: Hello, Kate. What's the matter?

Kate: Hello, Ann. Oh dear, I'm going out with Tom this evening, and I haven't got anything to wear.

Ann: What about your blue dress? That's lovely.

Kate: That old thing? No, it makes me look like a sack of potatoes.

Ann: Well, why don't you wear something of mine?

Kate: Could I really?

Ann: Yes, of course. Would you like to?

Kate: Well, I'd love to. If you really don't mind.

Ann: What about that green silk thing? You'd look great in that.

Kate: Oooh!

Ann: And I'll lend you my new shoes to go with it.

Kate: Well, thanks a lot, Ann. I'd better get moving. Tom's coming in twenty minutes.

Ann: OK. Wait a second. I'll go and get the dress. Shall I iron it for you?

Kate: Oh, Ann...

Hãy kiểm tra phần từ vựng để hiểu hết nghĩa của các từ mới. Sau đó bạn chuyển sang phần Thực hành hội thoại.

Dialogue Practice 1: Infinitive and to-infinitive

Hãy lưu ý cách sử dụng động từ nguyên dạng. Một số trường hợp dùng động từ nguyên dạng không có “to” (infinitive) như sau:

- *to* không dùng sau các động từ khuyết thiếu như *can, will, shall, would, could, had better...*
- *to* không dùng sau trợ động từ *do*.
- *to* không dùng trong câu trúc như *make / let/ hear somebody do something*. ..

Một số trường hợp dùng động từ nguyên dạng có “to” (to-infinitive) như sau:

- *to* dùng sau (*would*) *like / love...*
- *to* dùng sau câu trúc *something to wear/ drink/ eat...* và các câu trúc tương tự có sử dụng *anything, nothing...*
- *to* trong cụm từ *in order to* với nghĩa “để”.

Sau khi xem kỹ phần lý thuyết trên, bạn hãy làm bài tập sau bằng cách lựa chọn động từ nguyên dạng không hoặc có “to” để có các câu chính xác.

1. I haven't got anything (to eat / eat).
2. Why don't you (to take / take) a holiday?
3. I would like (to go / go) out tonight.
4. "That's the doorbell." "I'll (to go / go)."
5. Can you (to lend / lend) me some money?
6. That dress makes her (to look / look) funny.
7. I hope (to meet / meet) you again soon.
8. Shall I (to carry / carry) that bag for you?
9. What time do you have (to start / start) work in the morning?
10. It's nice (to see / see) you again.

Dialogue Practice 2: Suggestions, Orders and Requests

Bạn đã được học và sử dụng các mẫu câu gợi ý (suggestions), yêu cầu (orders), đề nghị (requests). Trong bài này chúng ta sẽ cung cấp các kiến thức đã học và làm luyện tập.

Có thể dùng các câu: What about...? Why don't you...? để gợi ý cùng làm một việc gì đó hay gợi ý người nghe làm việc gì đó.

Ví dụ: What about going to the cinema?

Why don't you take a holiday?

Có thể dùng ở từ "to" nhằm tránh sự lặp lại trong câu có dùng động từ nguyên dạng:

Ví dụ: A: I'm going out tomorrow. Would you like to (go out tomorrow)?

B: I'd love to (go out tomorrow).

Trong câu đề nghị có thể sử dụng "can". Trong trường hợp trình trọng, lịch sự hơn, có thể sử dụng "could" với cùng ý nghĩa.

Ví dụ: Can you lend me some money?

Could I borrow your book?

Câu hỏi: Shall I...? dùng để gợi ý rằng mình sẽ làm một việc gì; I will... thể hiện mình tình nguyện làm một việc gì.

Ví dụ: Shall I iron it for you?

I'll get you a glass of water.

Bây giờ bạn hãy ghép các câu hỏi với câu trả lời sau:

Ví dụ: 1. Can you lend me some stamps? b. I think so. How many do you need?

1. Can you lend me some stamps?	a. Sorry, I don't smoke.
2. Excuse me. Have you got the time?	b. I think so. How many do you need?

3. Can I borrow your pen?	c. Sorry, I'm afraid I'm using it.
4. Could you help me for a few minutes?	d. Sorry, I'm not free. My son's coming round.
5. Have you got the light?	e. Just after half past three.
6. Shall I post these letters for you?	f. Perhaps - I'll have a look. Yes, here you are.
7. Could I borrow your bicycle for half an hour?	g. OK. Can you put it back on my desk when you've finished with it?
8. Have you got change for 1 pound?	h. That's very kind of you. Could you do the potatoes?
9. Could I use your phone?	i. Well, I'm in a bit of hurry.
10. Would you like to play tennis this evening?	j. Of course. It's over there on the table.
11. Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to the station?	k. Sorry, I'm a stranger here myself.
12. I'll give you a hand with the cooking, shall I?	l. Yes, please, if you don't mind.

1.b..... 2. 3. 4. 5. 6.

7. 8. 9. 10. 11. J.

6B. STRUCTURE

Structure Practice 1: Present Perfect Continuous tense

Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn (Present Perfect Continuous) được cấu tạo như sau:

Present Perfect Continuous	
Positives	I have (I've) been working. He has (he's) been working.
Questions	Have you been working? Has he been working?
Negatives	I have not (haven't) been working. He has not (hasn't) been working.

Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn để diễn đạt một hành động hoặc trạng thái bắt đầu từ quá khứ, tiếp tục tới hiện tại, có thể vừa dừng lại. Nó thường được dùng khi muốn cho thấy hành động đó kéo dài bao lâu (thường đi với các từ: How long..., since..., for...).

Ví dụ: For the last six days he has been visiting Third World countries.

How long have you been waiting for me? Since 6 o'clock.

Has the fire been burning for three days?

Hay khi ta muốn diễn đạt hành động vừa mới ngừng lại, như trong ví dụ sau:

You are out of breath. Have you been running?

Sau khi nghiên cứu kỹ lý thuyết, hãy đặt câu sử dụng cấu trúc hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn với những động từ gợi ý sau.

Ví dụ: She / write / letters → She has been writing letters.

1. He / running →
2. She / painting / picture →
3. He / wash up →
4. She / play / table tennis →
5. He / telephone →
6. She / watch TV →
7. He / read / book →
8. He / drive / car →
9. They / dance / together →

Structure Practice 2

Hãy phân biệt các trường hợp sử dụng thì hiện tại hoàn thành đơn (Present Perfect Simple) với hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn (Present Perfect Continuous).

Tuy cùng để diễn đạt một hành động, thì hiện tài hoàn thành đơn quan tâm tới kết quả của hành động, có ý thể hiện hành động đã hoàn thành, thường dùng để hỏi và trả lời cho câu hỏi “How much, How many” hay “How many times”.

Ví dụ: How many pages of that book have you read?

I've read twenty pages.

Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn quan tâm tới hành động, không chú ý tới hành động đó đã kết thúc hay chưa, thường dùng để hỏi và trả lời cho câu hỏi “How long”.

Ví dụ: How long have you been reading that book?

I've been reading for one hour.

Note: Một số các động từ như know, like, believe... thường không dùng ở dạng tiếp diễn.

Ví dụ: I've known her for a long time. (không dùng: “I've been knowing”)

Hãy dùng từ gợi ý để đặt câu.

Ví dụ: I / write / letters / one hour. I / write / two letters

I've been writing letters for one hour. I've written two letters.

1. Tom / read / for 2 hours. He / read / 53 pages so far.

-
2. Linda / travel / for 3 months. She / visit / 6 countries so far.
-
3. Jimmy / win the national championship / four times. He / play / tennis/ since he was ten.
-
4. They / make / ten films since they left college. They / make films / since they left college.
-

Structure Practice 3

Hãy đọc các câu nói về nguyên tắc sử dụng thì Hiện tại hoàn thành, Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn và Quá khứ đơn sau đây, xác định xem câu nào đúng (Correct), câu nào sai (Wrong).

1. We can use the Present Perfect when we are talking about things which are still happening now.
2. We can use the Present Perfect Continuous when we are talking about things which are still happening now.
3. We cannot use the Present Perfect when we are talking about a finished action.
4. We can use the Present Perfect when we give the time of a finished action (yesterday, last week...).
5. We can use the Present Perfect Continuous when we give the time of a finished action (yesterday, last week...).
6. We use the Present Perfect for actions which happened longer ago.
7. We often use the Present Perfect to give news.
8. We often use the Present Perfect to talk about experience.
9. We often use the Present Perfect Continuous with the questions “How much, How many”.

6C. LISTENING

Listening Practice 1

Những câu sau đây được trích từ một bản tin thời sự. Trong đó mỗi mẫu tin có một chỗ sai. Bạn hãy lắng nghe bản tin, gạch chân dưới những chỗ sai và sửa lại cho đúng.

Ví dụ: President and Mrs Martin of Outland have just arrived in Fantasia for a state visit, which is expected to last three <u>weeks</u> .	days
1. Dr Rask has known Mrs Martin since their student days at the	

University of Goroda. 2. Dr Rask has just left for an overseas fact-finding tour. 3. Dr Rask is President of “Families against Hunger”, and for the last six days he has been visiting Third World countries. 4. Demonstrations are continuing against the proposed dam on the Upper Fant river, and demonstrators have been gathering through the centre of San Fantastico for several hours. 5. Traffic in West Square has not been able to move since half past eight this morning, and motorists are advised to avoid the city centre. 6. Heavy snow has been falling steadily for the past four weeks. 7. The River Fant has just burst its banks in North Milltown, and most of the town centre is under water. 8. Vegetable prices in San Fantastico have been going up steadily for the last ten days. 9. The Minister for Consumers affairs has just announced that price control on vegetables and meat will come into effect next week. 10. The Fantasia grottnik has risen to its highest level against the Outland dollar since last July: the exchange rate is now 1.32 dollars to the grottnik. 11. The fire which has been burning in Grand North Station for the last three days is now under control. 12. Three more policemen have been taken to hospital.	
--	--

Listening Practice 2: Pronunciation

Hãy gạch chân dưới trọng âm chính của từ. Sau đó đọc chúng một cách chính xác, đúng trọng âm.

agriculture	colony	assistant	average	avoid
economy	education	election	essential	vegetables
excellent	experiment	faithfully	family	
government	hospital	improve	interview	
necessary	percentage	population	unemployment	
qualification	salary	sincerely	traffic	

Listening Practice 3

Hãy đọc chính xác những nhóm từ sau. Những nhóm nào có cùng nguyên âm (Same)? Hãy tìm và gạch chân những nguyên âm khác biệt trong những nhóm còn lại (Different).

Ví dụ:	Different	1. heavy	dress	dead	<u>break</u>
	2. glove	lovely	over	above
	3. sort	talk	horse	yours
	4. eye	die	try	mine
	5. bird	beard	learn	turn
	6. book	look	shoe	would
	7. phone	clothes	soap	don't
	8. false	laugh	glasses	after

6D. READING

Những câu hỏi chuẩn bị cho bài đọc (Pre-reading questions) sau đây giúp bạn có sự chuẩn bị trước về đề tài được đề cập đến. Bạn hãy suy nghĩ nhanh và trả lời trước khi xem bài.

1. Do you have a computer? Do any of your friends have computers?

.....

2. Do you use the Internet? Do any of your friends use the Internet?

.....

3. Did you know about Internet two years ago?

.....

4. Do you shop on the Internet? What do you buy on the Internet?

.....

Bây giờ bạn hãy đọc bài đọc và trả lời những câu hỏi trong phần Reading Practice 1.

INTERNET SHOPPING

Twenty years ago, very few people used the Internet. Only scientists and people in the government knew about the Internet and how to use it. This is changing very fast. Now almost everyone knows about the Internet, and many people are online (using the Internet) every day. When people use the Internet, they often want to get information. But now, more and more people use the Internet to buy things.

Amazon.com was one of the first companies to try to sell products on the Internet. The company began in a garage and at first there were very few customers (people who buy things). At the Amazon.com site, people can search for a book about a subject, find many different books

about that subject, read what other people think about the books, order them by credit card, and get them in the mail in two days.

This kind of bookstore was a new idea, but the business grew. Now Amazon.com has had 10 million customers and has listed (sold) 18 million different items in categories including books, CDs, toys, electronics, videos, DVDs, home improvement products (things you use to fix up a house), software, and video games.

Today you can buy anything from gourmet food to caskets at a “virtual shopping mall”, that is, a group of stores all over the world that functions like a group of stores all in one place.

Are people going to shop more and more? No one knows for sure. Online shopping is growing, but it may not make money for companies like Amazon.com. Jeff Bezos, the man who started the company, is a billionaire, but his billions of dollars are invested in the company; even after several years, Amazon.com was still not making a profit. If online shopping continues to grow, Bezos hopes his investment will produce real profits.

Reading Practice 1

Có những khi không cần tra từ điển những từ bạn chưa biết vì nghĩa của chúng đã được diễn giải trong bài. Hãy tìm và viết nghĩa của các từ và cụm từ được gạch chân sau:

1. Many people are online.
2. Amazon.com has 10 million customers.
3. You can visit virtual shopping malls online.
4. They sell home improvement products.
5. Now Amazon.com has had 10 million customers and has listed 18 million different items.

Reading Practice 2

Hãy trả lời những câu hỏi sau, dựa vào bài đọc.

1. Why do many people use the Internet?
-

2. Why do more and more people use the Internet?
-

3. How many books can people find about a subject?
-

4. What does Bezos hope?
-

Reading Practice 3

Bây giờ bạn hãy đọc kỹ bài đọc và xác định những câu sau đúng hay sai bằng việc viết vào đầu câu: T hoặc F.

- 1. Twenty years ago very few people used the Internet.
- 2. Scientists didn't know how to use the Internet.
- 3. People often want to get information when they use the Internet.
- 4. People can order books by credit card.
- 5. Amazon.com didn't grow.
- 6. People can search for a book on Amazon.com.
- 7. Amazon.com's customers can buy books only.
- 8. Online shopping isn't growing.
- 9. Jeff Bezos is a millionaire.
- 10. Amazon.com was making a profit.

Reading Practice 4

Bạn hãy xác định câu trả lời đúng.

- 1. The title of the article is “Internet shopping”. Another possible title is...
- a. “Internet Games”
- b. “Shopping on the Internet”
- c. “Information and the Internet”

Reading Practice 5

Hãy dịch đoạn văn đầu tiên của bài sang tiếng Việt “Twenty years ago ... to buy things.”

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

SUMMARY

Đến đây bạn đã được học tất cả những nội dung ghi trong phần Tóm tắt bên dưới. Bạn hãy đọc thật kỹ. Nếu chưa nắm vững phần nào, bạn hãy đọc lại phần đó và làm các bài tập cho đến khi bạn đạt được mục đích của bài.

Trong Unit 6 bạn đã học những vấn đề sau:

1. Sử dụng thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn để thành lập các câu khẳng định, phủ định, nghi vấn.

She has/ hasn't been painting the ceiling for two hours.

Have you been playing football all afternoon?

2. Đặt câu hỏi và trả lời câu hỏi sử dụng thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn.

How long have you been waiting for me?

(I've been waiting) for an hour.

3. Nắm được ý nghĩa thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn.

4. Phân biệt các trường hợp sử dụng thì hiện tại hoàn thành với hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn.

I've been writing letters for an hour.

I've written three letters.

5. Sử dụng động từ nguyên dạng có “to” và không “to” một cách phù hợp và chính xác.

I haven't got anything to wear.

You look tired. You'd better have a rest.

6. Diễn đạt được các câu mang tính gợi ý, yêu cầu và đề nghị và những lái đáp lại phù hợp trong những tình huống đó.

Would you like a cup of tea?

Yes, please. / Yes, thanks, I'd love to.

Can you lend me some stamps?

Sure. How many do you need?

SELF-TEST

Thời gian tối đa để hoàn thành bài tự kiểm tra này là 100 phút. Điểm số dành cho mỗi câu hỏi được ghi trong ngoặc ở cuối mỗi câu hỏi. Nếu trả lời đúng tất cả các câu hỏi bạn có thể chuyển sang học tiếp Unit 7.

Chú ý: Bạn cần tự trả lời tất cả các câu hỏi trước khi tham khảo “Key to Self-test”.

I. Read the following text then answer the questions. (20 points)

LOST

My sense of direction is not very good, and I easily lost. One day, about ten years ago, I was walking in the mountains between France and Italy when the weather began to turn bad. I started to make my way back downhill, because I didn't want to be caught in a storm. But after a

few hundred metres, I realised that I was not sure of the way. The clouds came down lower and lower, it started to rain, and I was completely lost.

I called as loud as I could, but of course there was nobody close enough to hear me. I did not want to stay in the mountain, but it was impossible to go on, so I crawled into a hole between two rocks and waited for the storm to go over. After two or three hours the rain stopped and the clouds lifted, and I was able to start walking again. I was very cold and hungry, and I had nothing to eat except a few sweets.

About half an hour later I suddenly recognized my surroundings, and I realised that I was two or three hundred metres above the camp site. However, my troubles were not over. On my way down, I slipped and hurt my knee against a rock. There was a deep cut and it hurt very badly, and as soon as I got back to the camp I went to see a doctor. Fortunately, nothing was broken.

Questions

1. Is his sense of direction very good?

.....

2. What was the writer doing when the weather began to turn bad?

.....

3. Did he want to stay on the mountain during the storm?

.....

4. Where did he stay to wait for the storm to go over?

.....

5. How long did it rain?

.....

6. How was he when the rain stopped?

.....

7. Did he have anything to eat?

.....

8. What did he realise when he recognized his surroundings?

.....

9. What happened to him on the way down?

.....

10. Did he break his leg?

.....

II. Match the expressions and situations. Note that there are three expressions in each situation. (10 points)

Example: 0: Is everything all right? c. in a restaurant

Expressions Situations	
1. I'm afraid he's on the other line.	
2. Could I see the wine list?	a. on the telephone
3. Take-off is delayed for three hours.	
4. Is that Andrew? This is Paul.	
5. Can I try it on?	b. at an airport
6. Have you got it in a larger size?	
7. How much is it?	
8. Could you give him a message?	c. in a restaurant
9. Would you like a little more sauce?	
10. We have to go through a security check.	
11. Could I have the bill, please?	d. in a (clothes) shop
12. Nothing to declare.	

1..... 2..... 3..... 4..... 5..... 6.....
..... 7..... 8..... 10..... 11..... 12.....

III. Complete the sentences using the given words in the suitable form (Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous). (20 points)

- Where have you been? (you / play) tennis?
- Look! Somebody (break) that window.
- You look tired. (you / work) hard?
- “..... (you / ever / work) in a factory?” “No, never.”
- My brother is an actor. He (appear) in several films.
- “Sorry, I’m late.” “That’s all right. I (not / wait) long.”
- “Is it still raining?” “No, it (stop).”
- I (lose) my address book. (you / see) it anywhere?
- I (read) the book you lent me but I (not / finish) it yet.
- I (read) the book you lent me, so you can have it back now.

IV. Translate these true sentences into Vietnamese. (20 points)

1. When the spacecraft Apollo X was coming back to earth, it reached a speed of 24,791 miles per hour (39,897 kph) - the fastest speed at which human beings had ever reached.

.....
.....

2. In 1931 February, an American walked backwards from California to Turkey. In 1979, a New Zealander ran 50 metres in 18.4 seconds on his hands.

.....
.....

3. The record for non-stop balancing on one foot is 34 hours. The non-stop crawling record is 45,87 km.

.....
.....

4. A suit was made 1 hour 34 minutes 33.24 seconds from sheep to finished suit (Australia 1982).

.....
.....

5. A Russian fell 6,700 metres from a plane without a parachute in 1942, and lived. A British flier jumped from a burning plane without a parachute in 1944, fell 5,500 metres, landed in a tree and a snowdrift, and was not hurt.

.....
.....
.....

V. Complete the sentences using the given words in the suitable form (Past Simple or Past Continuous). (20 points)

1. A: What (you, do) when the accident occurred?

B: I (try) to change a light bulb that had burnt out.

2. After I (find) the wallet full of money, I (go, immediately) to the police and (turn) it in.

3. The doctor (say) that Tom (be) too sick to go to work and that he (need) to stay at home for a couple of days.

4. Peter (arrive) at Susan's house a little before 9.00, but she (be, not) there. She (study) at the library for her final examination in German.

Unit 6: Heavy snow has been falling...

5. Sandy is in the living room watching television. At this time yesterday, she (watch, also) television. That's all she ever does!
6. A: I (call) you last night after dinner, but you (be, not) there. Where were you?
- B: I (working) out at the fitness center.
7. When I (walk) into the busy office, the secretary (talk) on the phone with a customer, several clerks (work, busily) at their desks, and two managers (discuss, quietly) methods to improve customers service.
8. I (watch) a mystery movie on TV when the electricity went out. Now I am never going to find out how the movie ends.
9. Sharon (be) in the room when John told me what happened, but she didn't hear anything because she (read)
10. It's strange that you (call) because I (think / just) of you.

KEY TO DIALOGUE

Dialogue Practice 1

- | | | | | |
|-----------|------------|----------|-------------|------------|
| 1. to eat | 2. take | 3. to go | 4. go | 5. lend |
| 6. look | 7. to meet | 8. carry | 9. to start | 10. to see |

Dialogue Practice 2

- | | | | | | |
|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1b | 2e | 3g | 4i | 5a | 6l |
| 7c | 8f | 9j | 10d | 11k | 12h |

KEY TO STRUCTURE

Structure Practice 1

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. He has been running. | 2. She has been painting a/ the picture. |
| 3. He has been washing up. | 4. She has been playing table tennis. |
| 5. He has been telephoning. | 6. She has been watching TV. |
| 7. He has been reading a book. | 8. He has been driving a car. |
| 9. They have been dancing together. | |

Structure Practice 2

1. Tom's been reading for 2 hours. He's read 53 pages so far.
2. Linda's been travelling for 3 months. She's visited 6 countries so far.

3. Jimmy's won the national championship for four times. He's been playing tennis since he was ten.

4. They've made ten films since they left college. They've been making films since they left college.

Structure Practice 3

- | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|
| 1. Correct | 2. Correct | 3. Wrong |
| 4. Wrong | 5. Wrong | 6. Correct |
| 7. Correct | 8. Correct | 9. Wrong |

KEY TO LISTENING

Tapescript

Dr Rask has known Mrs Martin since their student days at the University of Goroda.

Dr Rask has just left for an overseas fact-finding tour.

Dr Rask is President of "Families against Hunger", and for the last six days he has been visiting Third World countries.

Demonstrations are continuing against the proposed dam on the Upper Fant river, and demonstrators have been gathering through the centre of San Fantastico for several hours.

Traffic in West Square has not been able to move since half past eight this morning, and motorists are advised to avoid the city centre.

Heavy snow has been falling steadily for the past four weeks.

The River Fant has just burst its banks in North Milltown, and most of the town centre is under water.

Vegetable prices in San Fantastico have been going up steadily for the last ten days.

The Minister for Consumers affairs has just announced that price control on vegetables and meat will come into effect next week.

The Fantasia grotnik has risen to its highest level against the Outland dollar since last July: the exchange rate is now 1.32 dollars to the grotnik.

The fire which has been burning in Grand North Station for the last three days is now under control.

Three more policemen have been taken to hospital.

Listening Practice 1

1. Mrs Martin → President
2. left for → returned from
3. days → weeks
4. gathering → marching

5. not been able to move → been very slow
6. snow → rain
7. most → parts
8. going up → reaching
9. meat → fruit
10. 1.32 → 1.23
11. North → South
12. policemen → firemen

Listening Practice 2

<u>agriculture</u>	<u>apply</u>	<u>assistant</u>	<u>average</u> <u>avoid</u>
<u>become</u>	<u>colony</u>	<u>company</u>	<u>continue</u>
<u>economy</u>	<u>education</u> <u>election</u>		<u>essential</u> <u>vegetables</u>
<u>excellent</u>	<u>experiment</u>	<u>faithfully</u>	<u>family</u>
<u>government</u>	<u>hospital</u> <u>improve</u>		<u>interview</u>
<u>necessary</u>	<u>percentage</u>	<u>population</u>	<u>unemployment</u>
<u>qualification</u>	<u>salary</u>	<u>sincerely</u>	<u>traffic</u>

Listening Practice 3

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. different: break | 2. different: over |
| 3. same | 4. same |
| 5. different: beard | 6. different: shoe |
| 7. same | 8. different: false |

KEY TO READING

Reading Practice 1

1. online: using the Internet
2. customers: people who buy things
3. virtual: not real
4. home improvement products: things you use to fix up a house
5. listed: sold

Reading Practice 2

1. Because they want to get information.
2. To buy things.
3. They can find many different books about that subject.

4. Bezos hopes his investment will produce real profits.

Reading Practice 3

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. T | 2. F | 3. T | 4. T | 5. F |
| 6. T | 7. F | 8. F | 9. F | 10. F |

Reading Practice 4

1. b “Shopping on the Internet”

Reading Practice 5.

Cách đây hai mươi năm, rất ít người sử dụng Internet. Chỉ có các nhà khoa học và những người làm việc trong chính phủ biết về Internet và biết sử dụng nó. Điều này đang thay đổi rất nhanh. Giờ đây hầu hết mọi người biết về Internet, và nhiều người sử dụng Internet hàng ngày. Khi người ta nghĩ đến Internet, họ thường muốn tìm kiếm thông tin. Nhưng giờ đây, ngày càng có nhiều người sử dụng Internet để mua hàng.

KEY TO SELF-TEST

I.

1. No, it isn't.
2. He was walking in the mountains between France and Italy.
3. No, he didn't.
4. In a hole between two rocks.
5. Two or three hours
6. He was very cold and hungry.
7. Yes, he had some sweets.
8. That he was two or three hundred metres above the camp site.
9. He slipped and hit his knee against a rock.
10. No, he didn't.

II.

- | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 2. c | 3. b | 4. a | 5. d | 6. d |
| 7. d | 8. a | 9. c | 10. b | 11. c | 12. b |

III.

1. Have you been playing
2. Somebody's broken
3. Have you been working
4. Have you ever worked
5. He's appeared

6. I haven't been waiting
7. It's stopped
8. I've lost ... Have you seen
9. I've been reading ... I haven't finished
10. I've read

IV.

1. Khi tàu vũ trụ Apollo X trâ về mặt đất, nó đã đạt tốc độ 24.791 dặm một giờ (39.897 km/h) - tốc độ nhanh nhất mà con người đã từng đạt được.
2. Tháng hai năm 1931, một người Mỹ đã đi bộ lùi từ California tới Thổ Nhĩ Kỳ. Năm 1979, một người Mỹ chạy bằng tay 50 mét trong 18,4 giây.
3. Kỷ lục đứng thẳng bằng một chân liên tục là 34 giờ. Kỷ lục bò liên tục không nghỉ là 45,87 km.
4. Năm 1982 tại Australia một bộ complê đã được làm trong vòng 1 giờ 34 phút 33,42 giây, từ lông cừu đến một bộ complê hoàn chỉnh.
5. Năm 1942, một người Nga đã ngã từ một chiếc máy bay độ cao 6.700 mét không có dù mà vẫn sống. Năm 1944, một phi công người Anh nhảy không dù từ một chiếc máy bay bị cháy, độ cao 5.500 mét, rơi vào một chiếc cây và một đồng tuyết, và không bị thương.

V.

1. were you doing ... was trying
2. found ... went immediately ... turned
3. said ... was ... needed
4. arrived ... was not ... was studying
5. was also watching
6. called ... weren't ... was working
7. walked ... was talking ... were working busily ... were discussing quietly
8. was watching
9. was ... was reading
10. called ... was just thinking

VOCABULARY

announce [ə'nauns]	v tuyên bố, thông báo
avoid [ə'veid]	v tránh
burst [bə:st]	v làm nổ, làm vỡ
casket ['kæskit]	n quan tài

Unit 6: Heavy snow has been falling...

come into effect	expr	có hiệu lực
crawl [krɔ:l]	v bò	
demonstration [,dəmən'streɪʃn]	n	cuộc biểu tình
exchange rate	n	tỉ giá hối đoái
fact-finding tour	n	chuyến đi khảo sát thực tế
fitness center ['fitnis]	n	trung tâm thể dục thể hình
get lost	v	lạc đà
gourmet ['guərmət]	n	người sành ăn
hard copy ['hɑ:d'kɔpi]	n	bản in (máy tính)
heavy snow	n	trận tuyết rơi lớn
item ['aɪtm]	n	mặt hàng
march [mɑ:tʃ]	v, n	đi diễu hành, cuộc diễu hành
memory ['meməri]	n	bộ nhớ (máy tính)
Ministry of Consumers Affairs	n	Bộ tiêu dùng
motorist ['məutəraɪz]	n	người đi xe máy
online ['ɒnlain]	adj, v	trực tuyến, lên mạng
overseas [əʊ'verzi:s]	adj	nước ngoài
price control ['praɪs,kɔn'trəul]	n	kiểm soát giá
profit ['prɔfɪt]	n	lợi nhuận
sense of direction	n	khả năng định hướng
slip [slip]	v	trượt
snowdrift	n	đống tuyết
steadily ['stedi:lɪ]	adv	một cách đều đặn
swallow ['swɒləu]	v	nuốt
Third World countries	n	các nước thế giới thứ ba
turn in	v	trả lại
under control	expr	trong tầm kiểm soát
virtual ['vɜ:tʃuəl]	adj	thực sự, thực tế
voice teacher	n	giáo viên luyện thanh

UNIT 7. MARY SAID THAT...

INTRODUCTION

Bây giờ bạn bắt đầu học Bài 7. Trong bài này, bạn sẽ học cách sử dụng mẫu câu điều kiện có thực.

Bạn cũng sẽ lưu ý phân biệt về các ý nghĩa và cách sử dụng cấu trúc “going to” để diễn đạt hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.

Đồng thời bạn cũng sẽ học cách sử dụng phù hợp và chính xác các động từ khuyết thiếu để diễn đạt khả năng có thể xảy ra, sự có thể làm được và sự bắt buộc phải làm một việc gì đó.

Ngoài ra bạn cũng được biết cách đặt câu tường thuật câu nói đã xảy ra trong quá khứ.

Bây giờ bạn hãy xem phần Mục đích của Bài 7.

UNIT OBJECTIVES

Phần Mục đích bài học giúp bạn biết cụ thể những kiến thức sẽ học trong bài.

Học xong Bài 7 bạn đã có thể:

- Thành lập các câu điều kiện có thực, điều kiện có thể xảy ra dùng mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng “if” (câu điều kiện loại 1).
- Nhận biết được sự khác biệt về ý nghĩa và sử dụng một cách phù hợp cấu trúc “going to” để diễn đạt hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai với ý nghĩa sự tiên đoán hay sự thông báo chú ý.
- Sử dụng phù hợp và chính xác các động từ khuyết thiếu “may” để diễn đạt khả năng có thể xảy ra, “can” để diễn đạt khả năng có thể làm và “must” diễn đạt sự bắt buộc phải làm gì đó.
- Đặt được câu tường thuật để kể lại câu nói trong quá khứ “He said...”

7A. DIALOGUE

Bạn hãy nghe bài hội thoại (Unit 7. Dialogue). Đây là đoạn hội thoại giữa hai nhà thám hiểm đang bay ngang qua một sa mạc ở Bắc Phi. Máy bay của họ bỗng nhiên bị hỏng động cơ.

A: We're in trouble, Pete. The engine's breaking up.

B: Oh, God! We're going to crash!

- A: There goes the engine.
- B: We're going to hit those rocks!
- A: No, we're not, Pete. We're OK. I'm going to get us down, all right?
- B: What are you doing? The plane's turning over!
- A: Relax, Pete. I know what I'm doing, right?
- B: Relax? Relax? What do you mean, relax? We're both going to die! I don't want to die! I'm too young to die!
- A: Nobody's going to die, Pete. You've got to keep calm. Now listen. I'm going to try to put the plane down over there.
- B: Over where?
- A: On that flat patch of hard sand, just ahead. But it's going to be a rough landing. So put your head down, and put your arms over your head. Landing in ten seconds.
- B: Oh, God! We're going to crash! I'm not going to look!
- A: Landing now, Pete.
- B: (Screams)

Hãy nghe và nhắc lại hội thoại ba lần. Kiểm tra phần từ vựng để đảm bảo là bạn đã hiểu hết nghĩa của các từ mới. Sau đó bạn chuyển sang phần Thực hành hội thoại.

Dialogue Practice 1: going to

Trong các bài trước, bạn đã được học cấu trúc *going to* để diễn đạt một kế hoạch, một dự định trong tương lai. Trong bài này, chúng ta sẽ ôn lại cấu trúc đó, được sử dụng với hai ý nghĩa:

- một sự tiên đoán (prediction), đặc biệt trong tình huống ai đó đã thấy được điều gì sắp xảy ra

Ví dụ: Oh, God! We're going to crash!

- một sự thông báo chú ý (to announce attentions)

Ví dụ: The engine's breaking up.

Bạn hãy xác định xem những câu sau đây trong bài có ý nghĩa nào: sự tiên đoán (P) hay để thông báo chú ý (A).

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|
| Ví dụ: 1. The engine's breaking up. | <u>A</u> / P |
| 2. I'm going to get us down. | P / A |
| 3. We're going to crash! | P / A |
| 4. We're going to hit those rocks! | P / A |
| 5. The plane's turning over! | P / A |
| 6. We're both going to die! | P / A |

7. I'm going to try to put the plane down over there. P / A

Dialogue Practice 2

Bạn hãy đọc một cách chính xác những từ sau, tìm những từ có âm /ə/ và gạch chân dưới những âm đó.

Ví dụ: mother	computer		
agriculture	become	between	colony
ever	figure	forward	government
improve	independent	industry	interview
salary	essential	apply	completely
finish	assistant	happy	possible

7B. STRUCTURE

Structure Practice 1: Real Conditional Sentences

Câu điều kiện có thực (câu điều kiện loại 1)

Câu điều kiện có thực (còn có thể gọi là câu điều kiện loại 1) sử dụng khi điều kiện rất có thể xảy ra. Câu gồm hai mệnh đề, vị trí có thể tráo đổi cho nhau.

If he runs,	he'll get there in time.
He'll get there in time	if he runs.
mệnh đề if (if clause)	mệnh đề chính (main clause)

Note: Ý câu có thể là hiện tại hoặc tương lai, nhưng động từ trong mệnh đề *if* thường chia ở thời hiện tại.

Ví dụ: If it rains tomorrow, we'll stay at home.

Bây giờ bạn hãy ghép phần đầu và phần cuối của câu để tạo thành các câu hoàn chỉnh.

Ví dụ: If you are travelling at 80 kph in a car, you can stop safely in 52 m.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. If you are travelling at 80 kph in a car, | a. next year won't be a leap year. |
| 2. If the score in your game is 40 - 15, | b. you have been married for 50 years. |
| 3. If today is your golden wedding anniversary, | c. you can understand at least a bit of Italian. |
| 4. If your great-grandparents all had blue eyes, | d. perhaps you need to see a doctor. |
| 5. If you travel from England to Scotland, | e. you have blue eyes. |
| 6. If last year was a leap year, | f. you can stop safely in 52 m. |
| 7. If you can speak French, | g. you do not go through customs and |

Unit 7: Mary said that...

8. If you can see a pink elephant,	immigration. h. you are probably playing tennis.
------------------------------------	---

1. f 2. 3. 4.
5. 6. 7. 8.

Structure Practice 2: *If Clause and When Clause*

Bạn cần phân biệt ý nghĩa câu có mệnh đề *if* và *when*.

- If: được sử dụng trong câu nói về điều có thể xảy ra hoặc có thể không xảy ra.

Ví dụ: If you see a black cat, you'll have good luck.

- When: được sử dụng trong câu nói về điều sẽ xảy ra.

Ví dụ: When I go to bed, I'll turn off the light.

Hãy điền vào chỗ trống sử dụng “if” hoặc “when” và chọn dạng đúng của động từ.

- 1..... I (get / will get) enough money, I (travel / 'll travel) round the world.
2. it (rains / 'll rain) this afternoon, we (stay / 'll stay) at home.
3. I (close / 'll close) the curtains it (gets / 'll get) dark.
4. I get older, I (stop / 'll stop) playing rugby.
5. You can't go home now, but you can go the game (is / 'll be) finished.
6. Get off the bus quickly it (stops / 'll stop).
7. you (say / 'll say) that again, I (hit / 'll hit) you.
8. I (go / 'll go) to bed tonight, I (dream / 'll dream) about you.
9. you (are / will be) in this country next year, I hope you (come / 'll come) and see us.

Structure Practice 3: Modal verbs *can*, *may* and *must*

Cách thành lập: hãy lưu ý cách thành lập câu sử dụng các động từ *can*, *may* và *must*. Đây là những động từ khuyết thiếu, bạn đã làm quen và sử dụng một số trong chúng ở các bài trước. Hãy nhớ là động từ khuyết thiếu cần kết hợp với một động từ nguyên dạng khác (không “to”) để tạo nên câu có nghĩa và khi chúng được chia theo các ngôi thì vẫn ở nguyên dạng.

S	+modal verb	+	do something
----------	--------------------	----------	---------------------

Thẻ phủ định của động từ khuyết thiếu được thành lập bằng cách thêm “not” vào sau động từ.

can → cannot (can't)

may → may not

must → must not (mustn't)

Dạng quá khứ của các động từ trên như sau:

can → could

may → might

Note: Riêng động từ “must” không có dạng quá khứ. Khi muốn diễn tả sự bắt buộc trong quá khứ, phải sử dụng động từ “have to” cũng có nghĩa là “phải”.

Ý nghĩa động từ: đồng thời, bạn hãy lưu ý sự khác biệt về ý nghĩa của các động từ *can* (có thể), *may* (có thể) và *must* (phải).

- Can: để diễn tả khả năng có thể làm được (ability) và khả năng có thể xảy ra (possibility).

Ví dụ: I can type. (khả n_ ng có thể làm được)

If you go on this holiday, you can relax every day. (khả n_ ng có thể xảy ra)

- Về nguyên tắc, “can” để nói về khả năng nói chung, trong các hoàn cảnh khác nhau. Khi nói về khả năng có thể xảy ra trong một hoàn cảnh nhất định, chúng ta thường dùng “may” và “might”.

Ví dụ: People can do stupid things when they are in love.

I'm afraid Mary may do something stupid. She is in love.

- Must và have to: để diễn tả sự cần thiết phải làm điều gì. Ngoài ra người Anh còn dùng “have got to” với nghĩa tương đương.

Ví dụ: We must go now.

We have to go now.

We've got to go now.

Note: “Must” và “have to” ở thể phủ định có ý nghĩa khác hẳn nhau.

Ví dụ: You mustn't tell anyone. (Bạn không được nói với ai.)

You don't have to tell anyone. (Bạn không phải nói với ai.)

Sau khi đã đọc kỹ phần trên, bạn hãy làm bài tập sau bằng cách điền vào chỗ trống, sử dụng các từ *can*, *cannot*, *may*, *may not*, *will*, *will not* và *must*.

1. Most birds fly.
2. Most animals fly.
3. We be a bit late this evening - I'm not sure.
4. If you go to Scotland for a holiday, you probably spend all your time sunbathing.
5. Secretary wanted - speak good English.

6. If you speak your own language in England, most people understand you.
7. If you speak English in Canada, most people understand you.
8. We don't know if we can go on holiday this year. We have enough money.
9. I don't know if I help you.
10. A professional pianist practise for several hours every day.

7C. LISTENING

Listening Practice 1: Reported Speech

Khi muốn tường thuật câu nói, hãy dùng câu tường thuật (Reported Speech); hay còn có thể gọi là câu nói gián tiếp (Indirect Speech).

Mary:

“I will never get married.”

You report:

Mary said (that) she would never get married.

Động từ chính trong câu tường thuật thường ở thời quá khứ (Mary said that... / I told her that...). Thời của động từ được tường thuật thường được thay đổi.

Nói chung, thì hiện tại hay tương lai trong câu trực tiếp được chuyển thành quá khứ trong câu gián tiếp.

am / is → was do / does → did

will → would

are → were

have / has → had

can → could

Thì quá khứ đơn trong câu trực tiếp thường có thể giữ nguyên trong câu gián tiếp, hoặc bạn có thể chuyển chúng sang thì quá khứ hoàn thành.

did → did / had done

saw → saw / had seen

knew → knew / had known

Bây giờ bạn hãy nghe cuộc hội thoại giữa hai nhân vật Jan và Dave đang nói về người chủ mới của họ. Xác định xem ai nói và người đó nói gì.

Ví dụ: 1. Jan asked Dave what he thought of the new boss.

2. said he Mrs Barker much.

3. said Mrs Barker trust them.

4. said it because she them yet.

5. asked why Mrs Barker to them before changing things.

6. said that the lunch break too short.

7. said that Mrs Barker like a fair person.

8. said that they ask the others what they

Listening Practice 2

Hãy tưởng thuật lại các câu sau, bắt đầu bằng: She said (that)...

Ví dụ: Sue: I like working with Paula.

→ She said (that) she liked working with Paula.

1. Dave: She isn't easy to get on with.

→.....

2. Sue: She's very fair.

→.....

3. Dave: She doesn't like to hear about her mistakes.

→.....

4. Sue: She tells interesting stories.

→.....

5. Dave: She doesn't always tell true stories.

→.....

6. Sue: She listens very well.

→.....

7. Dave: She tells everyone everything she hears.

→.....

8. Sue: Dave, you are not being fair.

→.....

9. Dave: I don't like people who are cleverer than me.

→.....

Listening Practice 3: Pronunciation

Hãy đọc các từ sau theo nhóm, xác định từ có trọng âm khác biệt, gạch chân dưới trọng âm đó và nói xem các từ còn lại có trọng âm rơi vào đâu.

Ví dụ: over waiting often above

→ above (others have stress on the first syllable)

1. become between improve forward

2. salary essential industry interview

- | | | |
|----------------|----------------|---------------------------|
| 3. figure ever | apply | happy |
| 4. assistant | holiday colony | possible |
| 5. faithfully | sincerely | completely extremely |

Writing Practice 1

Hãy điền vào chỗ trống sử dụng từ gợi ý in nghiêng.

I get on all right with my boss. He is sometimes a bit *interesting/ difficult*(1) to work for, but he's *never/ usually*(2) quite fair, and he trusts me to do my job well. I *hate/ like*(3) that.

On the other hand, he doesn't always realise how *much/ many*(4) time I need for some things, and he *comes/ gets*(5) angry when I haven't finished. But on the whole, I don't *know/ think*(6) we get on too badly.

Writing Practice 2

Hãy điền vào chỗ trống, dùng những từ có trong phần Writing Practice 1, mỗi chỗ trống sử dụng một từ.

I hate my job, and I can't stand my(1). We really don't get(2) well at all. He's very(3) to talk to, because he just doesn't listen. And he's not(4): he can make mistakes, and that's all right, but when I make a mistake, he(5) angry.

He changes his mind about things again and again. I can't leave my(6) right now, but I am really fed up with that man.

7D. READING

Reading Practice 1.

Hãy đọc bài đọc dưới đây rồi lựa chọn câu trả lái đúng. Mỗi từ trong phần câu hỏi có thể có nhiều nghĩa. Hãy chọn nghĩa mà từ có trong bài.

LOVE IS AN INSIDE-OUT NIGHTIE

GIRLS! HERE'S A GREAT WAY TO FIND OUT THE NAME OF YOUR FUTURE HUSBAND.

According to an old superstition, you will dream of your husband-to-be if you:

Wear your nightie inside out.

OR sleep with a mirror under your pillow.

OR count nine stars each night, for nine nights.

OR rub your bedposts with a lemon.

OR eat 100 chicken gizzards.

OR fill your mouth with water and run three times round the houses.

The first man you see as you run will have the same name as your future spouse.

If you don't believe, ask researcher Alvin Schwartz. He's about to publish a book called Cross Your Finger, Spit In Your Hat - a collection of the superstitions and old customs people used to help them through life. And he has found that we're just as anxious to court Lady Luck as any other generation.

"We don't just believe old wife's tales - we're busy making up new ones."

Mr Schwartz says: "We rely on superstitions for the same reasons people always have. When we are faced with situations we cannot control - which depend on luck or chance - superstitions make us feel more secure."

- | | | |
|------------|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. great | a. very important | b. very big |
| | c. well-known | d. good and enjoyable |
| 2. count | a. If you count you are important | b. find out how many there are |
| | c. a kind of lord | |
| 3. about | a. If you are about to do something, you are going to do it soon. | |
| | b. not exactly | |
| | c. on the subject of | d. round in a circle |
| 4. odd | a. odd numbers are 1, 3, 5... | b. strange |
| | c. not happening very often | |
| 5. custom | a. thing that people like to do at certain times or in certain situations | |
| | b. If you go to a foreign country, you may have to open your luggage at the customs. | |
| | c. the people who use a shop | |
| 6. anxious | a. afraid, nervous about something | |
| | b. not calm or relaxed | |
| | c. If you are anxious to do something, you want to do it. | |

Reading Practice 2

Hãy trả lái các câu hỏi sau, dựa vào bài đọc.

1. What will the first man you see as you run have?

.....

2. What is Alvin Schwartz about to do?

.....
3. On what reasons do they believe in superstitions?

.....

.....
4. How do superstitions make them feel when they are in situations that they cannot control?

.....

.....
5. Are they making up new superstitions?

.....

SUMMARY

Đến đây bạn đã học được tất cả những nội dung ghi trong phần Tóm tắt bên dưới. Bạn hãy đọc thật kỹ. Nếu chưa nắm vững phần nào, bạn hãy đọc lại phần đó và làm các bài tập cho đến khi bạn đạt được mục đích của bài.

Trong Unit 7 bạn đã học những vấn đề sau:

1. Thành lập câu điều kiện có thực, điều kiện có thể xảy ra dùng mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng “if” (câu điều kiện loại 1).

If both parents have got blue eyes, their children will certainly have blue eyes.

If it's sunny tomorrow, I'll go out.

2. Nhận biết được sự khác biệt về ý nghĩa và sử dụng một cách phù hợp cấu trúc “going to” để diễn đạt hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.

- với ý nghĩa tiên đoán

We are going to die!

- hay thông báo chú ý

The engine's breaking up.

3. Sử dụng phù hợp và chính xác các động từ khuyết thiếu “may” để diễn đạt khả năng có thể xảy ra, “can” để diễn đạt khả năng có thể làm và “must” diễn đạt sự bắt buộc phải làm gì đó.

I can swim.

They may not have a child with the same colour eyes.

You must stop smoking.

4. Đặt được câu tường thuật để kể lại câu nói trong quá khứ “He said...; He told me that...”
“You will never get married.”

He said that I would never get married.

He told me that I would never get married.

SELF-TEST

Thời gian tối đa để hoàn thành bài tự kiểm tra này là 120 phút. Điểm số dành cho mỗi câu hỏi được ghi trong ngoặc ở đầu mỗi câu. Nếu trả lời đúng tất cả các câu bạn có thể chuyển sang học tiếp Unit 8.

Chú ý: Bạn cần tự trả lời tất cả trước khi tham khảo “Key to Self-test”.

IA. Read the following text then choose the right answer. (30 points)

WHY DO PEOPLE LOOK LIKE THEIR PARENTS?

People's appearance (like that of animals and plants) depends on things called *genes*. Genes are found in the cells of people's bodies, and they are passed on from parents to children. A child has some genes from its father and some genes from its mother. The chemistry of genes is very complicated. Here are some facts about eyes.

Many Europeans and Americans can have blue, green or brown eyes. But a brown-eyed person, for example, may also carry genes for another colour in his/ her body. So two brown-eyed or green-eyed parents may not have a child with the same colour eyes. If a child's father and mother both have brown eyes, the child will probably also have brown eyes, but this is not certain.

If one parent has got blue eyes and one has got brown eyes, their children may have either blue eyes or brown eyes, but most will probably have brown eyes. (The gene for blue eyes is “recessive” and the gene for brown eyes is “dominant”. This means that if a child gets a gene for blue eyes and also a gene for brown eyes from its parents, brown will “win”, and the child's eyes will be brown, not blue).

People only have blue eyes if their bodies are carrying no genes for other eye colours. So if both parents have got blue eyes, their children cannot have eyes of another colour.

1. If both parents have got blue eyes, their children
 - a. will certainly have blue eyes.
 - b. will probably have blue eyes.
 - c. may have blue eyes.
2. If both parents have got brown eyes, their children
 - a. will certainly have brown eyes.
 - b. will probably have brown eyes.
 - c. may have brown eyes.
3. If one parent has got blue eyes and one has got brown eyes, their children
 - a. will certainly have blue eyes.

- b. will probably have blue eyes.
- c. may have either blue eyes or brown eyes.
- d. will probably have brown eyes.
- e. will certainly have brown eyes.

B. Answer the questions.

1. What does people's appearance depend on?

.....

2. Where are genes found?

.....

3. Whose genes does a child have?

.....

4. What colours of eyes can many Europeans and Americans have?

.....

5. When can people only have blue eyes?

.....

C. Translate the third paragraph into Vietnamese. (If one parent ... not blue)

.....

.....

.....

.....

II. Change these direct sentences into reported speech. (20 points)

“I'll be at home tomorrow.”

She said (that) she would be at home the next day.

1. “Mary's going to have a baby.”

→.....

2. “It will probably rain.”

→.....

3. “It's late.”

→.....

4. "I'm going to see Anna."

→.....

5. "Jack won't be at school on Friday."

→.....

6. "There will be a meeting next Tuesday."

→.....

7. "Alice and Rita are going to buy a car."

→.....

8. "I'll always love you."

→.....

9. "You'll forget me."

→.....

10. "Prices are going to go up next week."

→.....

**III. Match the beginnings and endings, using "must" to make complete sentences.
(15 points)**

Example: A teacher must know how to make lessons interesting.

1. A teacher	must	a. like animals
2. A driver		b. be interested in money
3. A gardener		c. know how to make lessons interesting
4. A businessman		d. know how to change his or her voice
5. A photographer		e. be able to type
6. A secretary		f. be good at mathematics
7. An engineer		g. like selling
8. A vet		h. like children
9. A doctor		i. like working alone
10. A salesperson		j. like working with people
11. A writer		k. have a camera
12. An actor or actress		l. have a good sense of direction
13. A shop assistant		m. want to help people

Unit 7: Mary said that...

14. A primary-school teacher		n. like working outside
15. A footballer		o. play football very well

1.c.... 2. 3. 4. 5.
6. 7. 8. 9. 10.
11. 12. 13. 14. 15.

IV. Choose the suitable verbs. (10 points)

1. You (may / could) leave now if you wish.
2. (Could / May) you open the window a bit, please?
3. (Can / May) you play the piano?
4. Listen, please. You (may not / could not) speak during this exam.
5. You (can't / might not) smoke on the bus.
6. (Can't / May) I make a call on your mobile phone?
7. Do you know if Mark (can / may) sing?
8. Caroline, your friends (can / could) stay the night if they want to. They are perfectly welcome.
9. I'm sorry but you (can't / may) use the computer until after I've finished.
10. (May / could) you lend me 40 Euros till Monday?

V. Translate the paragraph into English. (10 points)

Tôi thực sự thích bà chủ của mình. Bà ấy là một người đáng yêu, rất dễ làm việc và rất công bằng. Bà ấy luôn luôn hỏi tôi nghĩ thế nào trước khi bà ấy thay đổi điều gì. Nếu có một vấn đề, chúng tôi nói về vấn đề đó. Bà ấy không bao giờ cáu kỉnh. Tôi tin tưởng bà ấy, và bà ấy tin tưởng tôi. Làm việc cho bà ấy thật dễ chịu.

.....
.....
.....
.....

VI. Choose the right form of the verbs. (15 points)

1. I *have been writing / wrote* letters for the last two hours.
2. “How long *are you learning / have you been learning* English?” “Since last summer.”

3. When I was a child, we *have been living/lived* in a house by a river.
4. I *have had/have* this watch since my 18th birthday.
5. “How long *do you know/have you known* Jessica?” “We *have been/were* at school together 40 years ago.”
6. I *am/have been* ill for three days now. I think I’d better call the doctor.
7. *I’m going/I’ve been* home on Sunday.
8. Sorry I’m late. *Are you waiting/Have you been waiting* long?
9. *Have you ever seen/Did you ever* see a boxing match?
10. *Have you ever been/Did you ever* go camping when you were a child?
11. Where *have you had/did you have* lunch yesterday?
12. Where’s the telephone? There *has been/was* an accident!
13. *I’ve never travelled/I never travelled* by air.
14. Can you help me? *I’ve lost/I lost* my watch.
15. *I’ve lost/I lost* my glasses the other day.

KEY TO DIALOGUE

Dialogue Practice 1

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. A | 3. P | 4. P |
| 5. P | 6. P | 7. A | |

Dialogue Practice 2

<u>agriculture</u>	<u>colony</u>	<u>ever</u>	<u>figure</u>	<u>forward</u>
<u>independent</u>	<u>government</u>	<u>interview</u>	<u>salary</u>	<u>completely</u>
<u>assistant</u>	<u>possible</u>	<u>essential</u>		

KEY TO STRUCTURE

Structure Practice 1

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. f | 2. h | 3. b | 4. e |
| 5. g | 6. a | 7. c | 8. d |

Structure Practice 2

1. If I get enough money, I’ll travel round the world.
2. If it rains this afternoon, we’ll stay at home.
3. I’ll close the curtains when it gets dark.

4. When I get older, I'll stop playing rugby.
5. You can't go home now, but you can go when the game's finished.
6. Get off the bus quickly when it stops.
7. If you say that again, I'll hit you.
8. When I go to bed tonight, I'll dream about you.
9. If you are in this country next year, I hope you'll come and see us.

Structure Practice 3

- | | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|------------|-------------|----------|
| 1. can | 2. cannot | 3. may | 4. will not | 5. must |
| 6. will not | 7. will | 8. may not | 9. can | 10. must |

KEY TO LISTENING

Tapescript

Dave: Hello, Jan. How's it going?

Jan: OK, Dave. Well, what do you think of the new boss?

Dave: Mrs Barker? She's all right.

Jan: Yeah? I don't like her much.

Dave: Really? Why?

Jan: Well, I don't know. She doesn't seem to trust us the way Mr Lal did. She's always looking over our shoulders. You know what I mean?

Dave: Yeah, well, I accept that she doesn't know us yet.

Jan: Perhaps. But, I mean, why doesn't she talk to us before she changes things? You know our lunch break is twenty minutes shorter now. Look, I'd rather come in early and keep the lunch break the same as before.

Dave: Well, perhaps we can talk to her about it. She seems like a fair person; perhaps she just doesn't realise there's a problem.

Jan: Yeah, perhaps you are right. We can ask the others what they think.

Listening Practice 1

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Ví dù | 2. Jan ... didn't like |
| 3. Jan ... didn't/ didn't seem to | 4. Dave ... was ... didn't know |
| 5. Jan ... didn't talk | 6. Jan ... was |
| 7. Dave ... seemed | 8. Jan ... could ... thought |

Listening Practice 2

1. He said (that) she isn't easy to get on with.

2. She said (that) she / Paula was very fair.
3. He said (that) she didn't like to hear about her mistakes.
4. She said (that) she / Paula told interesting stories.
5. He said (that) she doesn't always tell true stories.
6. She said (that) she / Paula listened very well.
7. He said (that) she told everyone everything she heard.
8. She said (that) Dave wasn't being fair.
9. He said (that) he didn't like people who were cleverer than him.

Listening Practice 3

1. forward (others have stress on the second syllable)
2. essential (others have stress on the first syllable)
3. apply (others have stress on the first syllable)
4. assistant (others have stress on the first syllable)
5. faithfully (others have stress on the second syllable)

Writing 1

- | | | |
|--------------|------------|----------|
| 1. difficult | 2. usually | 3. like |
| 4. much | 5. gets | 6. think |

Writing 2

- | | | |
|---------|---------|--------------|
| 1. boss | 2. on | 3. difficult |
| 4. fair | 5. gets | 6. job |

KEY TO READING

Reading Practice 1

- | | | |
|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. b | 3. a |
| 4. b | 5. a | 6. c |

Reading Practice 2

1. He will have the same name as your future spouse/ husband.
2. He's about to publish a book.
3. The reasons people always have.
4. They make them feel more secure.
5. Yes, they are.

KEY TO SELF-TEST

I.

- A. 1. a 2. b 3. d
- B. 1. People's appearance depends on genes.
2. In the cells of people's bodies.
3. It has some genes from its father and some genes from its mother.
4. Blue, green or brown.
5. They only have blue eyes if their bodies are carrying no genes for other eye colours.

C. Nếu một trong hai bố mẹ có mắt xanh và một người kia có mắt nâu, con của họ có thể có mắt hoặc xanh hoặc nâu, nhưng hầu hết sẽ có thể có mắt nâu. (Gien cho mắt xanh là “gien lặn” và gien cho mắt nâu là “gien trội”). Điều này có nghĩa là nếu một đứa trẻ nhận được cả gien mắt xanh và cũng cả gien mắt nâu từ bố mẹ, màu nâu sẽ “thắng”, và mắt đứa trẻ sẽ có màu nâu, chứ không phải là màu xanh).

II.

1. She said (that) Mary was going to have a baby.
2. She said (that) it would probably rain.
3. She said (that) it was late.
4. She said (that) she was going to see Anna.
5. She said (that) Jack wouldn't be at school on Friday.
6. She said (that) there would be a meeting (the) next Tuesday.
7. She said (that) Alice and Rita were going to buy a car.
8. She said (that) she would always love him/ me.
9. She said (that) he would forget her.
10. She said (that) prices were going to go up (the) next week.

III.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 2. l | 3. n | 4. b | 5. k | |
| 6. e | 7. f | 8. a | 9. m | 10. g |
| 11. i | 12. d | 13. j | 14. h | 15. o |

IV.

- | | | | | |
|--------|----------|--------|------------|-----------|
| 1. may | 2. Could | 3. Can | 4. may not | 5. can't |
| 6. May | 7. can | 8. can | 9. can't | 10. could |

V.

I really like my boss. She's a lovely person, very easy to work for and very fair. She always asks what I think before she changes anything. If there's a problem we talk about it. She never gets angry. I trust her, and she trusts me. It's a pleasure to work for her.

VI.

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. have been writing | 2. have you been learning |
| 3. lived | 4. have had |
| 5. have you known ... were | 6. have been |
| 7. I'm going | 8. Have you been waiting |
| 9. Have you ever seen | 10. Did you ever |
| 11. did you have | 12. has been |
| 13. I've never travelled | 14. I've lost |
| 15. I lost | |

VOCABULARY

bedpost ['bedpoust]	n	cột giường
break up ['breɪkʌp]	v	vỡ vụn, nát
cell [sel]	n	té bào
court [kɔ:t]	v	tìm cách đạt đạt được, cầu
cross your finger [krɔ:s]	v	bắt chéo ngón tay
dominant ['dɒminənt]	adj	trội (gien)
function [fʌnʃən]	v	hoạt động, thực hiện chức năng
gene [dέi:n]	n	gien
gizzard ['gizəd]	n	cái mè (gà, chim)
green-eyed parents	n	bố mẹ có mắt xanh
home improvement products	n	nguyên liệu để sửa nhà
husband-to-be	n	người chồng tương lai
inside-out [in'said]	adj	mặt trái ra ngoài
invest [in'vest]	v	đầu tư
leap year ['li:pjə:]	n	năm nhuận
meringue pie [mέ'rædʒ]	n	bánh trứng đường
nightie	n	áo ngủ
old wife's tale	n	sự mê tín
pass on [pł:s]	v	truyền

Unit 7: Mary said that...

patch [pætəʊ]	n	khoảng đất nhỏ
pillow ['pilou]	n	gối
recessive [ri'sesiv]	adj	lặn (gien)
rifle ['raifl]	n	súng trường
spit [spit]	v	nhô nước bọt
spouse [spauz; spaʊs]	n	chồng, vợ
superstition [,su:pΩ'stiən]	n	sự mê tín
turn over	v	lật (thuỵết)

UNIT 8. IF I WERE YOU,...

INTRODUCTION

Bây giờ bạn bắt đầu học bài 8. Bài này gồm có một bài hội thoại, tiếp theo đó là các câu trúc ngữ pháp và các bài tập luyện cấu trúc. Bạn cũng sẽ làm các bài tập luyện nghe và đọc. Cuối bài là phần Tóm tắt, Bài tự kiểm tra, đáp án cho tất cả các bài tập và Bảng từ vựng gồm các từ mới có trong bài.

Bạn nên đọc các mục đích của bài 8 một cách cẩn thận. Phần này sẽ cho biết nội dung của bài học. Phần Tự kiểm tra giúp bạn thấy được mình nắm kiến thức trong bài đến đâu. Nếu bạn làm tốt phần này bạn có thể chuyển sang học bài 9.

Bây giờ bạn hãy xem mục đích của bài.

UNIT OBJECTIVES

Phần Mục đích bài học giúp bạn biết cụ thể những gì mà bạn sẽ học trong bài. Bạn cần cố gắng đạt được các mục đích của bài học và nên thường xuyên xem lại phần này trong khi học.

Học xong Bài 8 bạn có thể:

1. Đưa ra lái khuyên sử dụng cấu trúc:
If I were you, I would...
2. Cách sử dụng động từ Remember và Forget.
3. Sử dụng câu điều kiện không có thực ã hiện tại.
4. Sử dụng câu điều kiện không có thực ã quá khứ.

8A. DIALOGUE

Trước hết bạn hãy nghe đoạn hội thoại (Unit 8. Dialogue) giữa năm nhân vật là A, B, C, D và E để biết B được khuyên nên làm gì. Sau đó bạn hãy nghe lại đoạn hội thoại và nhắc lại từng câu một.

A: If I were you, I'd turn it inside out.

B: Well, I think I'll try it this way first.

A: I mean,-

- C: I wouldn't do it like that if I were you.
- B: Wouldn't you?
- C: No, I think you should turn it inside out.
- B: Oh, really? I'll think about it.
- D: Why don't you turn it sideways?
- B: You think so?
- D: Oh, yes, and remember to take the wheels off first.
- B: Take the wheels off?
- E: Hello. You've got the seat upside down.
- A: You should put it down on the floor, you know.
- B: Well, I -
- E: I think it would be much better if he turned it inside out, don't you?
- A: That's just what I said.
- E: You shouldn't do it with the wheels off.
- C: Don't forget to put it on the floor.
- E: If you moved it forwards a bit, -
- D: If you put the wheels on first, -
- C: If you turned it inside out, it would be much easier.
- A: If I were you, I'd go back to the beginning and start again.
- E: I'll help you.
- A: I'll help you too.
- C: We'll all help him.
- B: It's quite all right. I can do it by myself, thank you very much.
- E: No, it's no trouble.
- A: Come on, everybody.

Sau khi bạn đã nghe và nhắc lại được từng câu thì bạn chuyên sang làm bài tập thực hành hội thoại.

Dialogue Practice 1.

Trong bài hội thoại có sử dụng các cụm từ dưới đây. Trước tiên bạn hãy ghép các cụm từ với các bức tranh ở phía dưới:

up down on off backwards

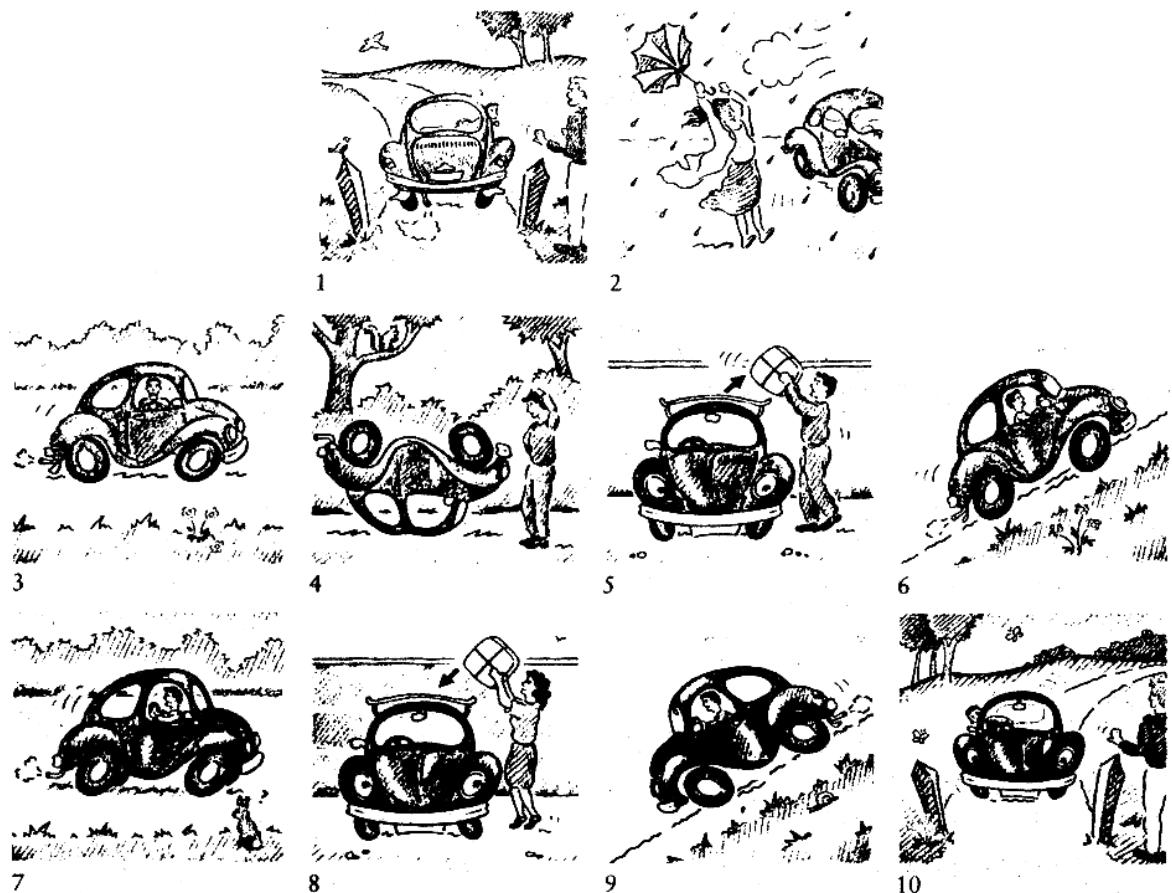
forwards

sideways

back to front

inside out

upside down



Sau khi bạn đã ghép xong, bạn hãy chuyển sang bài tập thực hành hội thoại số 2.

Dialogue Practice 2.

Bạn hãy nghe đoạn hội thoại giữa các nhân vật A, B, C, D và E và tìm xem sự khác nhau gì giữa đoạn hội thoại nghe được và đoạn hội thoại dưới đây.

A: If I were you, I'd turn it upside down.

B: Well, I think I'll try it this way first.

A: I mean,-

C: I wouldn't do it like that if I were you.

B: Wouldn't you?

C: No, I think you should turn it upside down.

B: Oh, really? I'll think about it.

D: Why don't you turn it sideways?

- B: You think so?
- D: Oh, yes, and remember to take the wheels off first.
- B: Take the wheels off?
- E: Hello. You've got the seat back to front.
- A: You should put it down on the table, you know.
- B: Well, I -
- E: I think it would be much better if he turned it upside down, don't you?
- A: That's just what I said.
- E: You shouldn't do it with the wheels on.
- C: Don't forget to put it on the table.
- E: If you moved it forwards a bit, -
- D: If you put the wheels off first, -
- C: If you turned it upside down, it would be much easier.
- A: If I were you, I'd go back to the beginning and start again.
- E: I'll help you.
- A: I'll help you too.
- C: We'll all help him.
- B: It's quite all right. I can do it by myself, thank you very much.
- E: No, it's no trouble.
- A: Come on, everybody.

8B. STRUCTURE

Structure 1: Using present "unreal" conditions

(Sử dụng câu điều kiện không có thực ở hiện tại)

Trong tiếng Anh, câu điều kiện không có thực ở hiện tại được dùng để chỉ ra rằng tình huống đó đang được hình dung ra chứ không phải là tình huống thực. Mệnh đề "if" sử dụng thì quá khứ đơn và mệnh đề chính sử dụng trợ động từ "would". Khi đặt tình huống bạn dùng thời quá khứ nhưng ý nghĩa vẫn ở thời hiện tại.

Ví dụ: Tom muốn gọi điện cho Sue nhưng anh ta không gọi được vì không biết số điện thoại của cô ấy, vì vậy anh ta nói:

If I knew her number, I would telephone her.

(Nếu tôi biết số điện thoại của cô ấy thì tôi sẽ gọi điện cho cô ấy.)

Điều này cho thấy Tom thực sự không biết số điện thoại của cô ấy. Anh ấy đang hình dung tình huống. Tình huống thực là anh ấy không biết số điện thoại của cô ấy.

Cấu trúc câu điều kiện dạng này như sau:

If clause (simple past),	main clause (would + infinitive).
Main clause (would +infinitive)	if clause (simple past).
If he knew ,	he would tell us .
If I won \$1,000,000,	I would buy a fast car.
I wouldn't do that	if I were you.
I would be in bed	if today was/ were Sunday.

Khi bạn nắm vững được cấu trúc này bạn hãy làm bài tập thực hành sau:

Structure Practice 1.

Bạn hãy xem ví dụ và sau đó lựa chọn để hoàn chỉnh các câu sau.

Ví dụ: If I were you, I would turn it upside down.

1. If John (were / would be) here, he (knew / would know) what to do.

.....

2. Do you think it (were / would be), a good idea if I (phoned / would phone) the police?

.....

3. What (did / would) you do if you (won / would win) a million pounds.

.....

4. If I (had / would have) more time, I (learnt / would learn) either karate or judo.

.....

5. What (did / would) you say if I (asked / would ask) you to marry me?

.....

6. If you (changed / would change) your job, what (did / would you) do?

.....

7. If today (were / would be) Sunday, I (were / would be) in bed.

.....

8. I (went / would go) and see Jake tomorrow if I (knew / would know) his address.

.....

Structure 2: Using "If I were you,..." to give advice

Trong Structure 1 bạn đã học cách sử dụng câu điều kiện không có thực để nói về một tình huống đang được hình dung ra không giống như tình huống đang có thực. Bạn có thể sử dụng câu trúc này để khuyên bảo hay thuyết phục ai đó làm điều gì. Bạn hãy đọc kỹ ví dụ sau:

Ann: I can't do this exercise.

Tom: If I were you I would ask Jake. He is very good at maths.

Tom khuyên Ann bằng cách giả định rằng anh ấy là Ann.

Bạn hãy làm bài tập thực hành sau.

Structure Practice 2.

Bạn đang khuyên bạn của mình, hãy sử dụng "If I were you, ..."

1. Your friend is always coughing because he smokes too much. Advise him to stop smoking.
-

2. Your friend has bad toothache. Advise him to go to the dentist.
-

3. Your friend rides his bicycle at night without lights. You think it is dangerous. Advise him not to do it.
-

4. Your friend is going to visit Greece. Advise him to learn a few words of Greek before he goes.
-

5. Your friend has a terrible headache. Advise him to take some aspirins.
-

Structure 3: Using "Remember" and "Forget"

Bạn dùng câu trúc "Remember to do something" trước khi bạn làm việc gì đó (nhớ phải làm gì đó). **Remember to do something** trái nghĩa với **Forget to do something**. Bạn hãy xem ví dụ sau:

I remembered to lock the door before I left but I forgot to shut the windows.

(Tôi nhớ phải khoá cửa trước khi tôi rời phòng nhưng tôi quên đóng cửa sổ).

Bạn dùng câu trúc *Remember doing something* sau khi bạn đã làm việc đó (nhớ đã làm gì đó).

Ví dụ: I clearly remember locking the door before I left.

(Tôi đã khoá cửa và bây giờ tôi nhớ rõ điều đó).

Bây giờ bạn hãy làm bài tập thực hành sau.

Structure Practice 3.

Trong bài tập này bạn hãy chia động từ trong ngoặc, sử dụng - **ing** hoặc **to + infinitive**.

Lưu ý: có một số trường hợp bạn có thể dùng được cả hai dạng chia của động từ.

1. Please remember (post) this letter.
2. We tries (put) the fire out but we were unsuccessful. We had to call the fire-brigade.
3. When you see Tom, remember..... (give) him regards, won't you?
4. What do you intend..... (do) about this problem?
5. Someone must have taken my bag, I clearly remember..... (leave) it by the window and now it has gone.
6. When she knew what had happened, she began (laugh) loudly.
7. Sue needed some money. She tried (ask) Gerry but she couldn't help her.
8. He tried (reach) the shelf but he wasn't tall enough.
9. "Did you remember (phone) Ann" "Oh no, I completely forgot."
10. I asked them to be quiet but they continued (make) a lot of noise.

Structure 4: Using past "unreal" conditions

(Câu điều kiện không có thực trong quá khứ)

Trong phần Structure 1, bạn đã học về câu điều kiện không có thực hay câu điều kiện giả thuyết ở hiện tại thì trong phần Structure 4 bạn sẽ học về câu điều kiện không có thực hay câu điều kiện giả thuyết trong quá khứ. Dạng câu điều kiện này được sử dụng để nói về một tình huống không có thực trong quá khứ.

Bạn hãy đọc kỹ tình huống sau:

Tháng trước Ann bị ốm. Tom không hề biết việc đó, vì vậy anh đã không đến thăm chị ấy. Họ gặp nhau sau khi Ann đã khỏe hơn. Tom nói:

If I had known that you were ill, I would have gone to see you.

Tình huống thực là Tom không biết việc Ann bị ốm. Vì vậy Tom nói **If I had known...** (nếu như tôi biết...)

Cấu trúc câu điều kiện dạng này như sau:

If clause (past perfect),	main clause (would + have done).
Main clause (would + have done)	if clause (past perfect).

If I had seen you when you passed me in the street,	he would have said hello.
I would have gone out,	if I hadn't been so tired.

Khi bạn đã nắm vững cấu trúc này bạn hãy làm bài tập sau.

Structure Practice 4.1. Hoàn thành các câu sau.

1. If he had been bad at maths, he (study) maths.
2. He (become) a journalist if he had studied literature.
3. If his parents had been well off, he (go) to university.
4. If he had gone to university, he (study) physics and (do) research.
5. He wouldn't have worked in a bank if his parents (be) well off.
6. If his parents had been well off, he (move) to Edinburgh.
7. If his parents had been well off, he (have) a holiday in Scotland.
8. If he (not / have) a holiday in Scotland, he (not / fall in love) with a Scottish girl.
9. If the war hadn't started, he (not / join) the army.
If he (not / join) the army, he (not be / hurt).

Structure Practice 4.2.

Điền “would” hay “had”? Câu có dấu phẩy hay không?

1. If he'd gone to Germany his Italian wouldn't have helped him.
.....
2. He'd have been a good journalist if he'd tried.
.....
3. Where would he have gone if he'd decided not to go to Italy?
.....
4. If I'd known how important Italian was going to be I'd have studied it much better.
.....
5. He'd have been sent to Germany if he'd joined the army two weeks earlier.
.....

8C. LISTENING

Listening Practice 1

Bạn hãy nghe một người nói về những ưu điểm và nhược điểm của các cửa hàng sang trọng (Unit 8. Listening).

Trong bài nghe có một số từ mới mà trước khi nghe bạn nên xem nghĩa của chúng ở phần Vocabulary. Những từ đó là:

smart store	checkout	power cut	security	arch
queue trolley		shoplifter scan		embarrassing

Listening Practice 2

Bây giờ bạn hãy nghe lại bài nghe trên và làm bài tập sau.

Trong bài tập này bạn viết chữ T trước câu đúng và chữ F trước câu sai, sau đó bạn viết lại các câu sai thành câu đúng.

- ... 1 In the supermarkets it wouldn't be quicker for shopping.
 - ... 2 There would be no queues at the checkouts.
 - ... 3 The prices would come down in the supermarkets.
 - ... 4 The stores would need checkout assistants.
 - ... 5 The stores would need technicians to look after and repair the machines.
 - ... 6 The shops would need more security guards.
 - ... 7 You can't argue with an assistant.
 - ... 8 You can argue with a computer.
 - ... 9 The stores believe that the security arches would stop shoplifters.
 - ... 10 Smart shopping sounds very simple.
-
.....
.....
.....
.....

Listening Practice 3

Dưới đây là những từ được sử dụng trong bài nghe bạn hãy gạch chân những từ có âm [ai]. Bạn có thể nghe lại vài lần.

thing security
disadvantages like

think machines	
quicker child	
prices	assistants

8D. READING

Bạn hãy đọc kỹ đoạn văn sau đây sau đó làm bài tập.

WOULD YOU GET INVOLVED?

What would you do if you saw a robbery or an assault? Would you intervene? If your neighbour's house was on fire, would you try to rescue the people inside? What would you do if someone needed your help in a dangerous situation? Would you get involved?

Dave Johnson was walking home one night when he saw a house on fire. Someone inside was shouting for help. "I couldn't just stand there and do nothing," says Dave. "I broke down the door and went in. It was extremely hot and there was smoke everywhere. But I got the old man out. Two minutes later the whole house was in flames. Yes, I'd do the same thing again."

But Pauline Castle would not get involved again. She intervened to help a neighbour when she heard the noise in the street. Pauline explains what happened. "Two girls were throwing stones at my neighbour's house. I shouted at them. But then they came over to my house and threatened me. I was shocked and really frightened. They were only about thirteen years old. I wouldn't do it again. I'd just ignore it. In fact last week I saw some boys vandalising an empty shop in the next street, but I didn't do anything. I just crossed the street. No, I wouldn't get involved again. It's not worth it."

Pauline's experience changed her attitude. In many other cases people would not intervene because they are afraid that they would look silly if they were wrong. In a famous case in 1993 two twelve-year-old boys murdered a little boy called James Bulger. Over a hundred witnesses saw James with the two boys before the murder. The boys were pushing him and hitting him. But all the witnesses thought that he was with his two brothers, so they did not do anything.

In New York in 1964, a man stabbed Kitty Genovese in her apartment. More than twenty people heard Kitty's screams, but nobody helped her. They all thought that someone else would call the police. Nobody helped Kitty and she died. But when Dave Greenwood tried to help a young woman outside a pub in Wales one night, he became the victim. The woman's attacker killed him. He left a widow and two young children.

It is because of cases like this that the police say: "Don't be a hero. Dial 999 and leave it to the police or the fire brigade." But in the heart of the moment, if someone was in trouble, what would you do?

Reading Practice 1

Bạn hãy trả lời các câu hỏi hỏi dưới đây dựa trên bài đọc.

1. What happened to Dave Johnson?

.....
.....

2. What happened to Pauline Castle?

.....
.....

3. What happened to James Bulger?

.....
.....

4. What happened to Kitty Genovese?

.....
.....

5. What happened to Dave Greenwood?

.....
.....

6. Find three reasons why people do not get involved?

.....
.....

7. Which case illustrates each of the reason?

.....
.....

8. What do the police advise?

.....
.....

Reading Practice 2

Bạn hãy trả lời các câu hỏi dưới đây.

1. What do you think about each of the cases?

.....
.....

2. What would you do in each of these cases?

.....
.....

3. What do you think of the police's advice?

.....
.....

4. Would you get involved if

- A car was on fire and there were people inside?

.....

- Two people were assaulting someone?

.....

- A thief grabbed someone's bag?

.....

- Two young men were breaking into a car?

.....

5. Would it make any difference if the victim was a member of your family / a colleague / a stranger or a child?

6. Have you ever witnessed a crime or a dangerous situation?

.....

7. Have you had an experience that make you think "I wouldn't do it again"? What happened?

.....

.....

Bạn hãy kiểm tra lại câu trả lái trong phần Key to Reading, sau đó đọc to và trôi chảy từng câu trong bài đọc.

Bạn đã học xong các cấu trúc ngữ pháp và làm bài tập của Unit 8. Bạn có thể nghỉ giải lao. Sau đó bạn hãy đọc phần Summary và xem lại phần Unit objectives để ôn lại toàn bài. Tiếp theo đó bạn làm bài Self-test.

SUMMARY

Tới lúc này bạn đã học tất cả những nội dung ghi trong phần Tóm tắt dưới đây. Nếu chưa nắm vững phần nào, bạn hãy đọc lại phần đó và làm các bài tập cho đến khi bạn đạt được mục đích của bài học.

Trong Unit 8 bạn đã học những vấn đề sau:

1. Bạn có thể đưa ra lời khuyên sử dụng các cấu trúc như:

If I were you, I would...

If I were you, I would stay at home.

2. Cách sử dụng động từ Forget và Remember để nói về những việc gì bạn nhớ sẽ làm hoặc nhớ là đã làm rồi và những việc bạn quên không làm hoặc quên là đã làm rồi.

I forget to lock the door.

I forget locking the door.

I remember to lock the door.

I remember locking the door.

3. Cách sử dụng câu điều kiện không có thực ã hiện tại để nói về một tình huống đang được hình dung ra chứ không phải là có thực.

If I knew it earlier, I would help him.

If he had a lot of money, he would buy a big house.

4. Cách sử dụng câu điều kiện không có thực ở quá khứ để nói về một tình huống không có thực trong quá khứ.

If I had married him, I would have been very rich.

You would have been very surprised if you had been there.

5. Âm [ai].

6. Từ vựng: Những từ có liên quan đến chủ đề của bài.

Nếu bạn thấy đã nắm vững được tất cả các điểm trong phần Summary, bạn hãy chuyển sang làm phần Self-test.

SELF-TEST

Thời gian tối đa để hoàn thành bài tự kiểm tra này là 100 phút. Điểm số dành cho mỗi câu hỏi được ghi trong ngoặc ở đầu mỗi câu. Nếu trả lời đúng tất cả bạn có thể chuyển sang học tiếp Unit 9.

Chú ý: Bạn cần tự trả lái tất cả các câu hỏi trước khi xem “Key to Self-test”.

I. Complete the conversation with the given verbs in the past tense or + would condition. Some verbs are used more than one time. (15 points)

be	do	have	know
phone	read	take	look

A: I can't think what to do. If John.....(1) here, he(2) what to do.

B: If I(3) you, I(4) the instruction book.

A: I've read it twice already, but I can't understand anything. Do you think it(5) a good idea if I(6) the top off and(7) inside?

B: I don't know. I don't think I(8) that if it(9) mine.

A: Well, what (10) you(11) if you(12) a problem like this?

B: I (13) John.

A: Well, that (14) easier if I(15) his number.

B: 61432.

II. "Should" or "would"? (10 points)

1. If I were you, I n't do it like that.
2. I think you..... phone the police.
3. you like a cup of tea?
4. It be better if you turned it upside down.
5. I think everybody stop smoking.
6. Ann said that she be here at six o'clock, but she isn't.
7. People n't drink and drive.
8. What you do if you won a million dollars?

III. Fill in the blanks with the given words to make a complete letter. (20 points)

be better	been	been	both	calmly	thanks
soon	sure	should	by yourself	why don't you	sorry
forget	haven't	to hear	I were you	love	wrong
weeks	yours				

Dear Al,

..... (1) a lot for the last letter.(2) I(3) answered before: I've.....(4) very busy getting ready to go to New York.

I was really sorry (5) about your trouble with Sally, especially because it has(6) going on for so long. You(7) try to make a decision soon, I think - it's bad for(8) of you to go on like this. I think perhaps it would(9) if you separated, but of course I might be(10) - I don't know Sally very well.

You know, if (11) I'd go away for a couple of(12). If you were(13) you could think this out and(14) decide what to do.(15) take your holiday now and go off to Scotland or somewhere like that? I'm(16) it would do you a lot of good.

Write again(17) and let me know how things are going. And don't(18) to kiss Julie for me.

Ann sends her (19)

..... (20),

IV. Make a chain of 10 “If” sentences, using the suggestions. Start with: "If I won a million dollars..." (15 points)

1. If I won a million dollars, I / buy a fast car.

.....

2. If I / buy a fast car, I / probably / drive it too fast.

.....

3. If I / drive it too fast, perhaps I / have an accident.

.....

4. If I / have an accident, I / go to hospital.

.....

5. If I / go to hospital, I / meet a beautiful nurse / fall in love / her.

.....

6. If she / fall in love / me, we / get married.

.....

7. If we / get married, we / be very happy / the beginning.

.....

8. But then, perhaps I would meet somebody else. If I / meet somebody else,...

.....

9.

10.

V. Make sentences for the following situations. (20 points)

Example: I can't give you a lift because we haven't got a car.

If I had a car, I would give you a lift.

1. We won't have a holiday because we won't have got any money.

If.....

2. I don't know the answer, so I can't tell you.

If.....

3. There aren't any eggs, so I won't make an omelette.

If.....

4. We have three children, so we won't take a year off and travel the world.

If

5. I'm not very clever, so I won't be a doctor.

If.....

6. He spends all his money gambling. He isn't a wealthy man.

If.....

7. I haven't got any spare time. I won't learn Russian.

If.....

8. Jim works very hard. He has no time to spend with his family.

If.....

9. I've got a headache. I can't go swimming.

If

10. We haven't got a big house. We can't invite friends to stay.

If.....

VI. Fill in the blanks with the given words. Each blank ONE word only.

adopt	animal	angry	arm	car	phoned
fish	fish	injured	local	lost	
love	oil		turn	police	put

Expensive kindness

A West German woman's (1) for cats has brought her an (2) cat and a bill for 23,000 pounds.

The story, told by German (3), began when the 56-year-old woman from Wuppertal (4) her cat and (5) an advertisement in the (6) paper.

A man (7) her to say he had found the (8), but in fact it was not hers. However, she felt sorry for the cat, which must have been a stray, and decided to (9) it.

On the way home in her Mercedes (10) the cat "suddenly went wild" and bit and scratched her (11). This caused the car to (12) off the road and crash into a parked car, bringing down a sausage stand and a neighbouring (13) and chip stand.

Boiling (14) burnt the arms of a 44-year-old woman selling
(15) and chips, and a 21-year-old woman who was waiting for her chips fainted and(16) herself falling to the pavement.

KEY TO DIALOGUE

Dialogue Practice 1

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1. backwards | 6. up |
| 2. inside out | 7. back to front |
| 3. sideway | 8. on |
| 4. upside down | 9. down |
| 5. off | 10. forwards |

Dialogue Practice 2

A: If I were you, I'd turn it *inside out*.

C: No, I think you should turn it *inside out*.

E: Hello. You've got the seat *upside down*.

A: You should put it *down* on the *floor*, you know.

E: I think it would be much better if he turned it *inside out*, don't you?

E: You shouldn't do it with the wheels *off*.

C: Don't forget to put it on the *floor*.

E: If you moved it *forwards* a bit, -

D: If you *put* the wheels *on* first, -

C: If you turned it *inside out*, it would be much easier.

KEY TO STRUCTURE

Structure Practice 1

1. If John were here, he would know what to do.
2. Do you think it were a good idea if I phoned the police?
3. What would you do if you won million pounds?
4. If I had more time, I would learn either karate or judo.
5. What would you say if I asked you to marry me?
6. If you changed your job, what would you do?
7. If today were Sunday, I would be in bed.

8. I went and saw Jake tomorrow if I knew his address.

Structure Practice 2

1. If I were you, I would stop smoking.
2. If I were you, I would go to the dentist.
3. If I were you, I wouldn't ride your bicycle at night without lights.
4. If I were you, I would learn a few words of Greek before you go.
5. If I were you, I would take some aspirins.

Structure Practice 3

- | | | | | |
|---------------------|------------|-------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. to post | 2. putting | 3. to give | 4. to do / doing | 5. leaving |
| 6. laugh / laughing | 7. asking | 8. to reach | 9. to phone | 10. to make /
making |

Structure Practice 4.1

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. would have studied | 6. would have moved |
| 2. would have become | 7. would have had |
| 3. would have gone | 8. wouldn't have fallen |
| 4. would have studied | 9. wouldn't have joined |
| 5. had been | 10. wouldn't have been hurt |

Structure Practice 4.2

1. If he *had* gone to Germany, his Italian wouldn't have helped him.
2. He *would* have been a good journalist if he *had* tried.
3. Where would he have gone if he *had* decided not to go to Italy.
4. If I *had* known how important Italian was going to be, I *would* have studied it much better.
5. He *would* have been sent to Germany if he *had* joined the army two weeks earlier.

KEY TO LISTENING

Listening Practice 1

Tapescript

Smart shopping. Would it be a good thing? Well, let's consider some of the advantages and disadvantages.

The supermarkets think that it would be a good thing. It would be quicker and there would be no queues at the checkouts. They also think that prices would come down, because they

wouldn't need checkout assistants. So they would save money. Of course, the checkout assistants wouldn't like that. They'd lose their jobs.

But would the stores really need fewer people? They wouldn't need checkout assistants, but they'd need technicians to look after and repair the machines. And technicians earn more money than checkout assistants. The shops would also need more security guards and they'd need assistants to help the customers when there were problems.

What about the shoppers? What would happen if you put something back on the shelves? What would happen if a child put extra things in the trolley or ran the pen over lots of things on the shelves? Would people really trust the computers? You can watch an assistant and you can argue with an assistant, but you can't with a computer. And what would happen if there was a power cut?

Finally, what about the security? The stores believe that the security arches would stop shoplifters. But how would shoppers feel about the arches? If you just forgot to scan something in the trolley, the alarm would ring when you went through the arch. Everyone in the store would look at you. Wouldn't that be a bit embarrassing?

Smart shopping sounds very simple, but would it need smart shoppers?

Listening Practice 2

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. F | 2. T | 3. T | 4. F | 5. T |
| 6. T | 7. F | 8. F | 9. T | 10. T |

In the supermarkets it would be quicker for shopping.

The stores wouldn't need checkout assistants.

You can argue with an assistant.

You can't argue with a computer.

Listening Practice 3

thing security	—
disadvantages like	—
think machines	—
quicker child	—
<u>prices</u>	assistants

KEY TO READING

Reading Practice 1

1. One night when he was walking home, he saw a house on fire. He heard someone inside shouting for help. He decided to break in and managed to get the old man out.

2. One day she saw two girls throwing stones at her neighbour's house. She intervened to help her neighbour. Then they came over to her house and threatened her. She was very shocked and frightened.

3. In 1993 he was murdered by two twelve-year-old boys. They were pushing and hitting him. But many witnesses thought that he was with his two brothers so they didn't do anything.

4. A man stabbed her in her apartment. More than twenty people heard her screams, but nobody helped her. They all thought that someone else would call the police. Nobody helped her and she died.

5. He tried to help a young woman outside a pub in Wales one night. The woman's attacker killed him. He died and left a widow and two young children.

6. First, they think that it's not worth.

Second, they are afraid that they would look silly if they were wrong.

Third, they would become the victim.

7. The case of Pauline Castle illustrates the first reason.

The case of Bulger illustrates the second reason.

The case of Dave Greenwood illustrates the third reason.

8. They advise the people not to become heroes. Dial 999 and leave it to the police or the fire brigade.

Reading Practice 2

Các câu trả lái tuỳ thuộc vào bạn. Nếu bạn thấy chưa hoàn toàn yên tâm về câu trả lái thì bạn có thể hỏi lại giáo viên khi bạn gặp.

KEY TO SELF-TEST

I.

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|-----------|-----------------|
| 1. were | 5. was | 9. were | 13. would phone |
| 2. would know | 6. took | 10. would | 14. would be |
| 3. were | 7. looked | 11. do | 15. had / knew |
| 4. would read | 8. would do | 12. had | |

II.

- | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| 1. would | 2. should | 3. would | 4. would |
| 5. should | 6. would | 7. should | 8. would |

III.

- | | | | |
|------------|-----------|-----------------|------------|
| 1. thanks | 6. been | 11. I were you | 16. sure |
| 2. sorry | 7. should | 12. weeks | 17. soon |
| 3. haven't | 8. both | 13. by yourself | 18. forgot |

4. been	9. be better	14. calmly	19. love
5. to hear	10. wrong	15. Why don't you	20. yours

IV.

1. If I won a million dollars, I would buy a fast car.
2. If I bought a fast car, I would probably drive it too fast.
3. If I drove it too fast, perhaps I would have an accident.
4. If I had an accident, I would go to hospital.
5. If I went to hospital, I would meet a beautiful nurse and fall in love with her.
6. If she fell in love with me, we would get married.
7. If we got married, we would be very happy at the beginning.
8. But then, perhaps I would meet somebody else.
9. If I met somebody else,... (It depends on you.)
10. (It depends on you).

V.

1. If we had money, we would have holiday.
2. If I knew the answer, I would tell you.
3. If there were some eggs, I would make an omelette.
4. If we didn't have three children, we would take a year off and travel around the world.
5. If I were very clever, I would be a doctor.
6. If he didn't spend all his money gambling, he would be a wealthy man.
7. If I had spare time, I would learn Russian.
8. If Jim didn't work very hard, he would have time to spend with his family.
9. If I didn't have a headache, I could go swimming.
10. If we had a big house, we could invite friends to stay.

VI.

1. love	5. put	9. adopt	13. fish
2. angry	6. local	10. car	14. oil
3. police	7. phoned	11. arm	15. fish
4. lost	8. animal	12. turn	16. injured

VOCABULARY

Bạn nên tham khảo Bảng từ vựng một cách thường xuyên trong quá trình học, không chỉ riêng bài này mà tất cả các bài khác để t_ng vốn từ vựng tiếng Anh. Bạn hãy viết lại những từ mới học, nghe và nhắc lại từng từ để nắm vững cách viết và cách phát âm cho đúng.

adopt [ə'dɒpt]	v	thông qua, thừa nhận
advantage [əd'veɪtɪdʒ]	n	ưu điểm, lợi thế
arch [ɑ:tʃ]	n	nhip cuốn
attitude ['ætɪtju:d]	n	thái độ, quan điểm
back to front	expr	đằng sau ra đằng trước
backwards	adv	thụt lùi
by myself	expr	tự tôi (làm điều gì đó)
checkout ['tɔ:ek'aut]	n	nơi kiểm tra hàng và thanh toán tiền
Come on	expr	tiến tới, tiến đến, nhanh lên nào
delighted [dɪ'laitid]	adj	vui sướng, vui thích
disadvantage [ˌdi:səd'veɪtɪdʒ]	n	nhược điểm, bát lợi thế
down	adv	xuống, đi xuống
either ... or	conj	hoặc ... hay
embarrassing [im'bærəsɪdʒ]	adj	bối rối, lúng túng
faint v lá đì, ngát xiu đì		
fall in love with	v	yêu, say đắm ai
fire brigade	n	đội chữa cháy
forwards	adv	thẳng phía trước
gamble ['gæmbɪ]	v	đánh bạc
ignore ['gæmbɪ]	v	lá đì
I'll think about this.	expr	Tôi sẽ nghĩ về điều đó.
illustrate ['iləstreɪt]	v	minh họa
in flame	expr	đang bốc cháy
in stead of	expr	thay cho
intend [ɪn'tend]	v	dự định, ý định
intervene [,ɪnt'vɛ:n]	v	can thiệp vào
involve [ɪn'velva]	v	đòi hỏi, kéo theo, làm cho dính líu vào, làm cho liên luy.

jar [dʒeɪ̯ə]	n cái vại, lọ, bình
journalist [dʒɜːnlɪst]	n phóng viên, nhà báo
murder [mɜːdə]	v,n giết (người), tội giết người
off	adv tách rời, rời xa, xa cách
omelette [ˈɒmlɪt]	n trứng tráng
power n điện	
project [prɒdʒekt]	n dự án
queue [kjuː]	n,v hàng, xếp hàng
research [riːsɜːs]t̬]	n sự nghiên cứu
scan [skæn]	v nhìn lướt
scratch [skræt̬]	v cào, làm xước
security [siːkjʊərɪtiː]	n sự an toàn, sự an ninh.
shoplifter n kẻ cắp giả làm khách mua hàng	
sideways	adj qua một bên, từ một bên
smart store	n cửa hàng lịch sự
spare time	n thời gian rỗi
stray [streɪ̯]	n cái khay
take off	v cất cánh (máy bay)
trolley [trɔːli]	n xe đẩy tay
victim [vɪktɪm]	n nạn nhân
well off	adv giàu có
witness ['wɪtnɪs]	n,v nhân chứng, làm chứng,
worth [wɜːθ]	adj giá, đáng giá

UNIT 9. HOW ABOUT THURSDAY?

INTRODUCTION

Bây giờ bạn chuyển sang bài số 9. Bài bày được bố cục giống như bài số 8, mở đầu bằng một bài hội thoại và các bài tập luyện hội thoại, tiếp đó là các cấu trúc ngữ pháp quan trọng bạn gặp trong bài và các bài tập thực hành cấu trúc. Cuối bài là phần Tóm tắt ngữ pháp, Bài tự kiểm tra, Bài tập củng cố, Đáp án cho tất cả các bài tập và Bảng từ vựng gồm các từ mới trong bài.

Bạn nên đọc mục đích của bài 9 một cách cẩn thận. Phần này sẽ cho bạn biết nội dung bạn sẽ học trong bài. Cũng giống như bài 8, những câu hỏi trong bài tự kiểm tra đều dựa trên những mục đích của bài học. Nếu làm tốt Bài tự kiểm tra có nghĩa là bạn đã nắm vững được các kiến thức yêu cầu trong bài. Sau đó bạn có thể chuyển sang bài tiếp theo.

UNIT OBJECTIVES

Phần Mục đích bài học giúp bạn biết cụ thể những gì mà bạn sẽ học trong bài. Phần Tóm tắt và Tự kiểm tra cuối bài được sắp xếp theo trình tự của những mục đích bài học. Bạn cần cố gắng đạt được các mục đích của bài học và nên thường xuyên xem lại phần mục đích này trong khi học.

Học xong bài 9 bạn có thể:

1. Biết cách nói để hẹn gặp
2. Sử dụng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn với nghĩa tương lai
3. Sử dụng giới từ chỉ thời gian
4. Sử dụng câu bị động ã thì hiện tại
5. Sử dụng câu bị động ã thì quá khứ

9A. DIALOGUE

Sau đây là phần mở đầu và phần kết thúc của các cuộc đối thoại. Bạn hãy đọc kỹ các phần.

1

"Parkhurst 7298."

"Hello, Paul."

"Hello. Who's that?"

"This is Audrey. Are you free today?"

A

"No, Thursday."

"Oh, I'm sorry, I thought you said Tuesday.
Thursday two fifteen. Yes, that's fine."

"All right. See you then."

"It depends. What time?"

"See you on Thursday. Bye."

"Bye."

2

"Hello, John. This is Angela. I'm trying to fix the Director's meeting. Can you tell me what days you're free next week?"

"Well, let me see. Monday morning's OK. Tuesday. Not Wednesday, I'm going to Cardiff in the morning. Thursday afternoon, I think. Friday's a bit difficult."

"How about Thursday at two fifteen?"

Tuesday two fifteen. Let me look in my diary."

B

"In the afternoon. My mother's coming down, and I'd like you to meet her. About half past four?"

"Half past four's difficult."

"What about earlier? Say, two."

"Yes, OK. I'll come round at two. Your place?"

"My place."

"OK. See you in a couple of hours."

3

"Hello. I'd like to make an appointment to see Dr Grey."

"Yes. What name is it, please?"

"Simon Graftey."

"Yes. Monday at three o'clock, Mr Graftey?"

"Three o'clock difficult. I'm working until a quarter to three. Could it be later?"

C

"Three thirty?"

"Yes, that's all right. Three thirty on Monday, then. Thanks very much. Goodbye."

Dialogue Practice 1

Sau khi bạn đã đọc kỹ các phần đầu và phần kết thúc các hội thoại, bạn hãy ghép phần đầu và phần kết thúc sao cho thích hợp.

Dialogue Practice 2

Trong đoạn hội thoại 2 khi một người nào đó muốn hẹn gặp Dr Grey anh ấy nói: "**I'd like to make an appointment to see Dr Grey.**" Vậy giờ bạn hãy luyện nói hẹn gặp một số người sau đây.

1. John

.....

2. Peter

.....

3. Mary

.....

4. Dr Sander

.....

5. Linda

.....

Dialogue Practice 3

Cũng trong đoạn hội thoại 2 giữa John và Angela, bạn thấy Angela hỏi John ngày nào anh ấy rỗi để sắp xếp cuộc họp. Nhưng vào ngày thứ tư thì John không thể tham gia cuộc họp được vì anh ấy đã có kế hoạch đi Cardiff. Bây giờ bạn hãy thực hành đưa ra một số các công việc mà bạn đã bố trí làm hoặc có kế hoạch trước đó để nói rằng vào ngày đó bạn không thể tham gia vào làm các việc khác được.

Ví dụ: go / Cardiff

Not Wednesday. I'm going to Cardiff.

1. visit / Electronics company

.....

2. go / exhibition

.....

3. have an appointment with the director of PTIT.

.....

4. have a trip to South America.

.....

5. meet / the Minister of Education

.....

Dialogue Practice 4

Bạn hãy kể những việc mà bạn có kế hoạch làm vào ngày chủ nhật như ví dụ sau.

Ví dụ: What are you doing on Sunday?

I'm going to sleep.

1. learn to drive

.....

2. practise swimming

.....

3. ride my bicycle

.....

4. run a race

.....

5. play football

.....

6. wash clothes

.....

7. correct papers

.....

8. visit my grandmother

.....

9. do my homework.

.....

10. clean the house

.....

9B. STRUCTURE

Structure 1: Using prepositions of time

(Giới từ chỉ thời gian)

Những từ "in", "at" và "on" thường được dùng trong cụm từ chỉ thời gian.

1. "In" dùng với các từ chỉ các buổi trong ngày.

in the morning

in the afternoon

in the evening

Hoặc dùng với các từ chỉ tháng, mùa, n_m:

in January

in spring

in 2005

2. "At" được dùng để chỉ các điểm thời gian cụ thể.

at 6 o'clock

at noon

at half past nine

at midnight

at 7 pm

at Christmas

3. "On" được dùng với các ngày trong tuần.

on Saturday

on Saturday morning

on January 28, 2005

Structure Practice 1

Trong bài tập thực hành này bạn có một ví dụ mẫu, cuối câu có từ hoặc cụm từ gợi ý. Bạn hãy viết các câu mới sử dụng các cụm từ gợi ý cho sẵn dưới đây và các giới từ chỉ thời gian thích hợp.

Ví dụ: Sunday - I go shopping **on Sunday**.

1. 8 pm

.....

2. summer

.....

3. Christmas

.....

4. Monday afternoon

.....

5. May 1st, 2005

.....

Structure 2: Using "Present continuous" with future meaning

(Dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn với ý nghĩa tương lai)

Bạn dùng thì hiện tại với ý nghĩa tương lai khi bạn muốn nói về điều gì bạn đã bố trí làm. Hãy giá bạn hãy đọc kỹ tình huống sau:

SUN THU	
MON: TENNIS 2 PM	FRI: DINNER WITH ANN
TUE: DENTIST 10.10	SAT
WED	

Trên đây là thời gian biểu của Tom. Anh ấy đã quyết định và đã bố trí để làm các việc sau:

He **is playing** tennis on Monday afternoon.

(Tom sẽ chơi tennis vào chiều thứ hai.)

He **is going** to the dentist on Tuesday morning.

(Anh ấy sẽ đến bác sĩ nha khoa vào sáng thứ ba.)

He is having dinner with Ann on Friday.

(Anh ấy sẽ ăn tối với Ann vào ngày thứ sáu.)

Sau khi bạn đã nắm vững cấu trúc này bạn hãy làm bài tập thực hành dưới đây.

Structure Practice 2. Bạn hình dung ra tình huống sau - một người bạn của bạn đang lập kế hoạch đi nghỉ mát. Bạn hãy hỏi anh ấy về kế hoạch đó và sử dụng các từ cho trước để đặt câu hỏi.

1. Where / go? o Where are you going?
 2. go / by car?
-

3. when / leave?
-

4. go / alone?
-

5. where / stay?
-

Structure 3: Using "simple present passive" and "past simple passive"

(Sử dụng câu bị động ở thì hiện tại đơn và quá khứ đơn)

Bạn hãy đọc thật kỹ ví dụ sau đây.

My grandfather built this house in 1930 (1) - Active sentence

This house was built in 1930 (2) - Passive sentence

Như bạn thấy cả hai câu trên đều đúng về cấu trúc ngữ pháp. Việc sử dụng câu bị động hay câu chủ động tuỳ thuộc bạn muốn nhấn mạnh vào "This house" hay "My grandfather". Nếu bạn muốn nhấn mạnh vào chủ thể là ai hoặc cái gì đã thực hiện hành động (trong ví dụ này là "My grandfather") thì bạn dùng câu ở dạng chủ động. Còn nếu bạn muốn nhấn mạnh vào chủ thể là ai hoặc cái gì bị tác động đến (trong ví dụ này là "This house") thì bạn dùng câu ở dạng bị động, tức là câu số 2.

Bây giờ bạn hãy xem tiếp ví dụ nữa dưới đây:

Somebody built this house in 1930 (3) - Active sentence (câu chủ động)

This house was built in 1930 (4) - Passive sentence (câu bị động)

Trong ví dụ trên thì bạn thấy câu số (3) có chủ ngữ là "somebody". Chính chủ ngữ này làm cho câu không được rõ nghĩa và đồng thời cũng không cung cấp thêm được thông tin gì cho nên

trong trường hợp này bạn sử dụng câu bị động - tức câu số (4) sẽ tốt hơn. Dưới đây là cấu trúc câu bị động ở thì hiện tại đơn và các ví dụ.

Subject + to be (am / is / are) + Past participle

Chủ ngữ + tobe (chia ở hiỆn tÝI) + phân từ hai của động từ

Simple present passive

Active: **clean (s)**

Somebody **cleans** this room every day.

Passive: **am / is / are + cleaned**

This room **is cleaned** every day.

Dưới đây là cấu trúc câu bị động ở thì quá khứ đơn và các ví dụ minh họa.

Subject + to be (was/ were) + Past participle

Chủ ngữ + tobe (chia ở quá khứ đơn) + phân từ hai của động từ

Simple past passive

Active: **cleaned**

Somebody **cleaned** this room yesterday.

Passive: **was / were + cleaned**

This room **was cleaned** yesterday.

Bây giờ bạn hãy làm bài tập thực hành sau đây.

Structure Practice 3.1. Bạn hãy hoàn thành các câu dưới đây sử dụng các động từ cho sẵn trong ngoặc đơn.

1. Many accidents(cause) by dangerous driving.
2. Cheese(made) from milk.
3. The roof of the building(damage) in a storm a few days ago.
4. There's no need to leave a tip. Service(include) in the bill.
5. You(invite) to the wedding. Why didn't you go?
6. A cinema is the place where films(show).
7. In the United States, elections for President(hold) every fours years.
8. Originally the book(write) in Spanish and a few years ago it(translate) into English.
9. We were driving along quite fast but we(overtake) by lots of other cars.

Structure Practice 3.2. Bạn hãy viết câu hỏi ở dạng câu bị động. Một số câu viết ở thái quá khứ, một số câu viết ở thì hiện tại.

1. Ask about the telephone. (When / invent?)

When.....

2. Ask about glass. (How / make?)

How.....

3. Ask about Australia. (When / discover?)

When.....

4. Ask about silver. (What / use for?)

What.....

5. Ask about television. (When / invent?)

When.....

9C. LISTENING

Listening Practice 1

Dưới đây là cuộc hội thoại giữa Sarah và Steve, trước khi nghe hội thoại bạn hãy đọc từ đầu đến cuối và điền vào các ô trống sử dụng các cụm từ sau:

this	place	having dinner with
fine	see you on Sunday	depends
bit	what	later
thought you said	free	a lot what

Sarah: Hello, Steve.(1) is Sarah. How are you?

Steve: OK(2) about you?

Sarah: Oh, I'm(3). Listen, Steve. I'm having a party this weekend. Are you(4) on Sunday?

Steve: Saturday? Well, it's a(5) difficult. I'm(6) Ann and her family in the evening.

Sarah: No, Sunday.

Steve: Oh, I'm sorry. I(7) Saturday. Sunday might be OK. It(8).(9) time?

Sarah: Oh, any time after eight.

Steve: I can't manage eight, but I'll come a bit(10). Say nine.

Sarah: That's fine. Any time you like.
Steve: Where?

Sarah: My(11). Bring a bottle.

Steve: OK. Thanks(12).(13) then.

Sarah: Bye.

Sau khi đã điền vào hết các ô trống trong bài hội thoại, bạn hãy nghe (Unit 9. Listening) để kiểm tra lại xem các ô trống bạn điền đã đúng chưa. Chú ý khi nghe bạn có thể nghe từng câu, từng đoạn hoặc nghe từ đầu đến cuối bài hội thoại. Bạn hãy lựa chọn cách thức phù hợp nhất để điền được hết vào các ô trống.

Listening Practice 2

Bây giờ bạn đã có bài hội thoại hoàn chỉnh giữa Sarah và Steve. Bạn hãy đọc lại một lần nữa và trả lời các câu hỏi sau:

1. Who is talking to whom in the dialogue?

.....

2. How is Sarah?

.....

3. What is Sarah doing this weekend?

.....

4. Who is Steve having dinner with on Saturday evening?

.....

5. Is Steve free on Sunday?

.....

6. Where is Sarah's party held?

.....

7. What does Sarah ask Steve to do?

.....

Listening Practice 3

Dưới đây là những từ được sử dụng trong bài nghe, bạn hãy gạch chân những từ có âm [æ] . Bạn có thể nghe lại đoạn hội thoại đó vài lần.

place after

party any

Sunday

manage

Saturday	say
family	thanks

9C. READING

Bạn hãy đọc đoạn văn sau đây.

Paper was invented by the Chinese in the first century AD. The art of paper-making took seven hundred years to reach the Muslim world and another seven hundred years to get to Britain (via Spain, Southern France and Germany).

Most paper is made from wood. When trees are cut down they are transported to paper mills. Here they are cut up and the wood is broken up into fibres which are mixed with water and chemicals. This mixture is then dried and made into paper.

Paper-making is an important British industry, and paper from Britain is exported to Australia, South Africa and many other countries. Some of the wood used in the British paper-making industry comes from trees grown in Britain, but wood is also imported from other countries such as Norway. One tree is needed for every four hundred copies of a typical forty-page newspaper. If half the adults in Britain each buy one daily paper, this uses up over forty thousand trees a day. Trees are being cut down faster than they are being replaced, so there may be a serious paper shortage at the beginning of the twenty-first century.

Reading Practice 1

Bây giờ bạn hãy đọc kỹ lại bài văn trên sau đó quyết định xem 9 câu dưới đây câu nào đúng và câu nào sai so với các thông tin đã cho trong bài. Viết chữ T bên cạnh câu đúng và chữ F bên cạnh câu sai.

- ... 1. Paper was invented by the Greeks.
- ... 2. It was invented in the first century AD.
- ... 3. Paper-making is an unimportant industry in Britain.
- ... 4. British paper is imported from South Africa.
- ... 5. All British paper is made from wood grown in Great Britain.
- ... 6. Wood fibres are mixed with chemicals and water, and then dried and made into paper.
- ... 7. Four hundred trees are needed to make a typical forty-page newspaper.
- ... 8. There may not be enough paper at the beginning of the twenty-first century.

Reading Practice 2

Bạn hãy viết những câu sai trên thành câu đúng vào chỗ trống dưới đây.

Bạn hãy kiểm tra lại câu trả lời trong phần Key to Reading, sau đó đọc to và trôi chảy từng câu trong bài đọc.

Bạn đã học xong các cấu trúc ngữ pháp và làm bài tập của Unit 9. Bạn có thể giải lao. Sau đó bạn đọc phần Summary và xem lại phần Unit objectives để ôn lại toàn bài rồi làm Self-test.

SUMMARY

Tới lúc này bạn đã học tất cả những nội dung ghi trong phần Tóm tắt dưới đây. Nếu chưa nắm vững phần nào, bạn hãy đọc lại phần đó và làm các bài tập cho đến khi đạt được mục đích của bài học.

Trong Unit 9 bạn đã học những vấn đề sau:

1. Cách nói hẹn gặp.

I'd like to make an appointment to see Mr Sander.

2. Sử dụng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn với nghĩa tương lai.

I'm going to Ho Chi Minh city next week.

She's meeting him next Friday morning.

We're having dinner together on Saturday.

3. Giới từ chỉ thời gian.

They're having an appointment at 2 pm.

He's flying to New York on September 22nd.

You're visiting his old friend in the afternoon.

4. Cách sử dụng câu bị động ã thì hiện tại.

French is spoken in France.

Cheese is made from milk.

Many people are employed here.

5. Cách sử dụng câu bị động ã thì quá khứ.

This house was built three years ago.

He was chased by a big dog.

These exercises were done.

SELF-TEST

Thời gian tối đa để hoàn thành bài tự kiểm tra này là 90 phút. Điểm số dành cho mỗi câu hỏi được ghi trong ngoặc ở đầu mỗi câu hỏi. Nếu trả lời đúng tất cả các câu hỏi bạn có thể chuyển sang học tiếp Unit 10.

Chú ý: Bạn cần tự trả lời tất cả các câu hỏi trước khi xem “Key to Self-test”.

I. Make complete sentences about what these people have arranged to do, using “be + doing something”. (15 points)

1. Linda / wash her hair.

.....

2. Peter / write to his mother.

.....

3. He / play tennis.

.....

4. She / buy a sweater.

.....

5. They / see a film.

.....

6. They / go to a party.

.....

7. She / have drink with a friend.

.....

8. She / do some gardening.

.....

9. He / do his gardening.

.....

10. Her mother / make a cake.

.....

II. Fill in the blanks using *in*, *at*, *before* or *until*. (10 points)

1. "When's your birthday?"two weeks"

2. I'll see you againTuesday.

3. I'll be on holiday from tomorrow the end of August.

4. Good night. See youthe morning.
5. I must finish this letter.....four o'clock, or I'll miss the post.
6. Hurry up - the train goesten minutes!
7. The next meeting will beJune 20th
8. I'll be late for workMonday - I've got to go to the dentist.
9. "Can I speak to Janet?" "I'm afraid she's awaynext week."
10. I'm seeing the dentistten o'clock.

III. What languages are spoken in what countries? Use the suggested words. (10 points)

Example: French is spoken in France and Belgium.

1. Japanese /Japan / Korea.
Japanese.....
2. Chinese / China / Saudi Arabia / Egypt / Kuwait.
Chinese.....
3. German /Germany / Austria / Switzerland.
German.....
4. English / Britain / the USA / Canada / Australia.
English.....
5. Spanish / Spain / Venezuela / Argentina.
Spanish.....
6. Russian / Russia / the Ukraine / Georgia.
Russian.....
7. Greek / Greece / Cyprus.
Greek.....

IV. Read the text then answer the questions. (10 points)

Some of Britain's imports and exports

Britain imports petroleum, mainly from the Middle East and Libya; cars from Europe and Japan; lamb and butter from New Zealand; and fruit from the EEC, South America and Africa.

Some of Britain's exports are: chemicals, which are produced all over the country; chocolate and sugar confectionery, which are made mostly in York and the South West; drinks,

which are produced mainly in Scotland; and metal products, which are manufactured in many regions including York, South Wales, the Midlands and the Northern Region.

Questions

1. What are the imports of Britain?

.....

2. Where does Britain import petroleum?

.....

3. What does EEC stand for?

.....

4. What are some of Britain's exports?

.....

5. Where are chemicals produced?

.....

6. Where are drinks mainly produced?

.....

7. Where are metal products manufactured?

.....

V. Fill in the blanks with the words in Exercise IV. (15 points)

Some of Australia's imports and exports

Australia(1) books from Britain, electronic equipment (2) Japan, cars.....(3) heavy machines (4) Britain and the USA. Some of Australia's exports are: wool,(5) is produced(6) in the dry regions and(7) New South Wales; wheat, which(8) grocer in the South East and in the region of Perth; sugar, which is(9) mainly in Queensland; and minerals (lead, zinc, etc) which are imported (10) by Britain and Japan.

VI. Write passive sentences, using suggested words. (15 points)

Example: That church looks very old. (When / it / build?) *When was it built?*

1. This is a very popular television programme. (every week it / watch / by millions of people).

Every week it

2. What happened to the cars produced in this factory? (most of them / export?)

3. Was there any trouble at the demonstration?
Yes, (about 20 people / arrest).....

4. There is no longer military service in Britain.
Really? (when / it / abolish?).....

5. Did anybody call an ambulance to the scene of the accident?
Yes, (but nobody / injure / so it / no / need).....

VII. Put the given verbs in present or past tense, in active or passive voice. (15 points)

KEY TO DIALOGUE

Dialogue Practice 1

1B

2A

3C

Dialogue Practice 2

1. I'd like to make an appointment to see John.
2. I'd like to make an appointment to see Peter.
3. I'd like to make an appointment to see Mary.
4. I'd like to make an appointment to see Dr Sander.
5. I'd like to make an appointment to see Linda.

Dialogue Practice 3

1. I'm visiting Electronics Company.
2. I'm going to the exhibition.
3. I'm having an appointment with the director of PTIT.
4. I'm having a trip to South America.
5. I'm meeting the Minister of Education.

Dialogue Practice 4

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. I'm learning to drive. | 2. I'm practising swimming. |
| 2. I'm riding my bicycle. | 4. I'm running a race. |
| 3. I'm playing football. | 6. I'm washing clothes. |
| 4. I'm correcting papers. | 8. I'm visiting my grandmother. |
| 5. I'm doing my homework. | 10. I'm cleaning the house. |

KEY TO STRUCTURE

Structure Practice 1

1. She usually gets up at 8pm.
2. They often have holiday in summer.
3. We give each other presents at Christmas.
4. We are having a party on Monday afternoon.
5. He is flying to Ho Chi Minh city on May 18th, 2005.

Structure Practice 2

1. Where are you going?
2. Are you going by car?
3. When are you leaving?
4. Are you going alone?
5. Where are you staying?

Structure Practice 2.1

1. Many accidents are caused by dangerous driving.
2. Cheese is made from milk.
3. The roof of the building is damaged in a storm a few days ago.
4. There's no need to leave a tip. Service is included in the bill.
5. You were invited to the wedding. Why didn't you go?
6. A cinema is the place where films are shown.
7. In the United States, elections for President are held every fours years.
8. Originally the book was written in Spanish and a few years ago it was translated into English.
9. We were driving along quite fast but we were overtaken by lots of other cars.

Structure Practice 2.2

1. When was the telephone invented?
2. How is glass made?
3. When was Australia discovered?
4. What is silver used for?
5. When was television invented?

KEY TO LISTENING

Listening Practice 1

- | | | |
|---------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. this | 5. bit | 9. what |
| 2. what | 6. having dinner with | 10. later |
| 3. fine | 7. thought you said | 11. place |
| 4. free | 8. depends | 12. a lot |
| | | 13. see you on Sunday |

Listening Practice 2

1. Sarah is talking to Steve in the dialogue.
2. Sarah is fine.
3. She is having a party this weekend.
4. He is having dinner with Ann and her family.
5. Yes, he is.

6. It is held in Sarah's place.
7. She asks Steve to bring a bottle.

Listening Practice 3

place after	
party any	
Sunday	<u>manage</u>
<u>Saturday</u>	say
<u>family</u>	<u>thanks</u>

KEY TO READING

Reading Practice 1 & 2

1. Paper was invented by the Greeks. (F) - *Paper was invented by the Chinese.*
2. It was invented in the first century A.D. (T)
3. Paper-making is an unimportant industry in Britain. (F) - *It is an important industry in Britain.*
4. British paper is imported from South Africa. (F) - *It is exported to South Africa.*
5. All British paper is made from wood grown in Great Britain. (F) - *Some British paper is made from wood grown in Great Britain.*
6. Wood fibres are mixed with chemicals and water, and then dried and made into paper.
(T)
7. Four hundred trees are needed to make a typical forty-page newspaper. (F) - *One tree is needed to make a typical forty-page newspaper.*
8. There may not be enough paper at the beginning of the twenty-first century. (T)

KEY TO SELF-TEST

I.

1. Linda is washing her hair.
2. They are going to a party.
3. Peter is writing to his mother.
4. She is having drink with a friend.
5. He is playing tennis.
6. She is doing some gardening.
7. She is buying a sweater.
8. He is doing his gardening.
9. They are seeing a film.
10. Her mother is making a cake.

II.

1. in
5. at
8. on

- | | | |
|----------|-------|----------|
| 2. on | 6. in | 9. until |
| 3. until | 7. on | 10. at |
| 4. in | | |

III.

1. Japanese is spoken in Japan and Korea.
2. Chinese is spoken in China, Saudi Arabia, Egypt and Kuwait.
3. German is spoken in Germany, Austria and Switzerland.
4. English is spoken in Britain, the USA, Canada and Australia.
5. Spanish is spoken in Spain, Venezuela and Argentina.
6. Russian is spoken in Russia, the Ukraine and Georgia.
7. Greek is spoken in Greece and Cyprus.

IV.

1. They are petroleum, cars, lamb, butter and fruit.
2. It imports petroleum from the Middle East.
3. It stands for European Economic Community.
4. They are chemicals, chocolate, sugar, drinks and metal products.
5. They are produced all over the country.
6. They are produced mainly in Scotland.
7. They are manufactured in many regions including York, South Wales, the Midlands and the Northern Region.

V.

- | | | | |
|------------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| 1. imports | 4. from | 7. in | 10. mainly |
| 2. from | 5. which | 8. is | |
| 3. and | 6. mainly | 9. produced | |

VI.

1. Every week it is watched by millions of people.
2. Were most of them exported?
3. Yes, about 20 people were arrested.
4. Really? When was it abolished?
5. Yes, but nobody was injured so it was not needed.

VII.

1. It's a big factory. Five hundred people are employed here.
2. Water covers most of the earth's surface.

3. Most of the earth's surface is covered by water.
4. The park gates are locked at 6.30 pm every evening.
5. The letter was posted a week ago and it arrived yesterday.
6. The boat was sunk quickly but fortunately everybody was rescued.
7. Ron's parents died when he was very young. He and his sister were brought up by their grandparents.
8. I was born in London but I grew up in the north of England.
9. While I was on holiday, my camera disappeared from my hotel room.
10. Why was Bill sacked from this job? What did he do wrong?
11. Why did Sue resign from her job? Didn't she enjoy it?
12. The company is not independent. It is owned by a much larger company.
13. I saw an accident last night. Somebody called an ambulance.
14. Luckily nobody was injured so the ambulance was not needed.
15. Where were these photographs taken? In London? Did you take them?

VOCABULARY

A.D. (Anno Domini)	adv	sau công nguyên
abolish [ə'bɒlɪʃ]	v	xoá bỏ
Africa ['æfrɪkə]	n	châu Phi
appointment [ə'pɔɪntmənt]	n	cuộc hẹn
arrest [ə'rest]	v	bắt giữ
cause [kɔ:z]	v	gây nên, gây ra
century ['sentʊəri]	n	thế kỷ
chemical ['kemikl]	n	hoá chất
confectionery [kən'fekʃnəri]	n	xưởng làm đường, bánh kẹo
damage ['dæmɪdʒ]	v	gây thiệt hại, làm tổn thương
EEC (European Economic Community)	expr	Cộng đồng kinh tế châu Âu
electronic [,ilek'trɒnik]	adj	thuộc điện tử
electronics [ilek'trɒniks]	n	điện tử học
Europe ['juːərp]	n	châu Âu
exhibition [,eksɪ'bɪʃn]	n	triển lãm
export ['ekspɔ:t]	v,n	xuất khẩu, hàng xuất khẩu
fibre ['faibə]	n	sợi

hold v tổ chức, tiến hành	
import ['impɔ:t]	v, n nhập khẩu, hàng nhập khẩu
include [in'klu:d]	v bao gồm, gồm có
injure ['indʒə]	v làm bị thương, làm tổn thương
invent [in'vent]	v phát minh
mainly	adv chủ yếu
manufacture [mænʃu'fækʃn]	v sản xuất
Middle East ['midl'i:st]	n Trung Đông
military service ['mili:təri]	n nghĩa vụ quân sự
mill [mil]	n xưởng cưa
mineral ['minərəl]	n, adj khoáng vật, khoáng
mix [miks]	v trộn lẫn, hoà lẫn
mostly	adv hầu như, hầu hết
originally [ɔ'rɪdənlɪ]	adv đầu tiên, khởi thuỷ
overtake v đuổi kịp và vượt	
petroleum [pə'lju:məm]	n dầu mỏ
region [rɪ:dɪən]	n vùng, miền
resign [,rɪ:'zain]	v từ bỏ, bỏ
sack [sæk]	v đuổi, sa thải
shortage ['ɔ:tɔ:tidʒ]	n sự thiếu hụt
silver ['sɪlvə]	n bạc
sink - sank - sunk	v làm chìm, làm đắm
South America	n Nam Mỹ
storm [stɔ:m]	n cơn bão, đồng tố
surface [sə:fɪs]	n bề mặt
tip [tip]	n tiền thưởng công
transport ['trænsپɔ:t]	v vận chuyển
wood [wud]	n gỗ, rừng
wool [wul]	n len

UNIT 10. HE ASKED ME IF...

INTRODUCTION

Bây giờ bạn chuyển sang bài số 10. Bài này được bố cục giống như bài số 9, mở đầu bằng một bài hội thoại và các bài tập luyện hội thoại, tiếp đó là các cấu trúc ngữ pháp quan trọng bạn gặp trong bài và các bài tập thực hành cấu trúc. Cuối bài là phần Tóm tắt ngữ pháp, Bài tự kiểm tra, Bài tập củng cố, Đáp án cho tất cả các bài tập và Bảng từ vựng gồm các từ mới trong bài.

Bạn nên đọc mục đích của bài 10 một cách cẩn thận. Phần này sẽ cho bạn biết nội dung bạn sẽ học trong bài. Cũng giống như bài 9, những câu hỏi trong bài tự kiểm tra đều dựa trên những mục đích của bài học. Nếu bạn làm tốt Bài tự kiểm tra có nghĩa là bạn đã nắm vững được các kiến thức yêu cầu trong bài.

UNIT OBJECTIVES

Phần Mục đích bài học giúp bạn biết cụ thể những gì mà bạn sẽ học trong bài. Phần Tóm tắt và Tự kiểm tra cuối bài được sắp xếp theo trình tự của những mục đích bài học. Bạn cần cố gắng đạt được các mục đích của bài học và nên thường xuyên xem lại phần mục đích này trong khi học.

Học xong bài 10 bạn có thể:

- Biết cách sử dụng cấu trúc với động từ "must" để dự đoán khả năng mà bạn tin chắc chắn xảy ra.
- Sử dụng cấu trúc với "can't" để dự đoán những điều bạn tin rằng không thể thực hiện được.
- Sử dụng "might", "could" và "probably" để dự đoán khả năng có thể xảy ra hoặc không xảy ra tùy theo mức độ.
- Cách sử dụng "say" và "tell" trong câu nói gián tiếp.
- Cách chuyển các câu hỏi trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp.

10A. DIALOGUE

Bây giờ bạn hãy nghe đoạn hội thoại (Unit 10. Dialogue) giữa Janet và Fred tại một bữa tiệc. Fred đang kể cho Janet về những công việc mà anh ấy làm.

Bạn hãy nghe hội thoại và nhắc lại từng câu trong bài.

Fred: Hello, then. What's your name?

Janet: Oh, Janet Parker.

Fred: Oh, yes? I'm Frederick. Frederick Grettly Onassis. But my friends call me Fred.

Janet: Oh. What do you do, er, Fred?

Fred: Oh. I'm a photographer. I photograph famous people: film stars, pop singers, people like that.

Janet: Oh, yes. Where do you work, then? Are you based in London?

Fred: Oh, no. I live in Paris and California. But I travel all over the world.

Janet: Oh, yes?

Fred: I've just got back from Washington. I've been photographing the President for Time magazine.

Janet: Oh, have you?

Fred: Before that, I was in Venice for the film festival. In a few days, I'll be in Tokyo for a fashion show. It's a busy life, you know. A busy life.

Janet: It must be terribly interesting. All that travelling. All those famous people.

Fred: Oh, no. Famous people - They're all the same, really. I was saying to Paul Mc Cartney only last week - I get so tired of famous people. Sometimes I just want to be with ordinary simple people. Ordinary people have more character. More real beauty. Now you, Janet. I find you interesting. You have a very unusual face.

Janet: Oh, yes? Have I really?

Fred: Yes, Janet. You have wonderful eyes. Wonderful. Very expressive. Tell me, what do you do? Are you an actress? A model?

Janet: Oh, no. I work in a shop.

Fred: Really? In a shop! You surprise me. Janet, I want to photograph you. I'll put your face on the covers of the world's fashion magazines. We'll do some pictures in my London studio first of all. And then probably I'll take you to Paris - or perhaps to California: the light is better in California. Yes. We'll go to California in my Boeing 747.

Janet: Oh! You've got a Boeing 747?

Fred: Well, it's really my father's. He's quite a rich man.

Janet: What does he do?

Fred: Oh, oil, diamonds, gold, ship-building - boring things like that. I'm not interested in business myself. I'm more the artistic type. Like my mother. She's a Shakespearean actress, you know. I like her. I love nature, poetry, ideas, beauty.

Janet: Oh, yes. So do I. So do I.

Fred: Janet. This isn't a very interesting party. We'll go to the studio now...

Sau khi đã hoàn thành xong phần này bạn chuyển sang bài thực hội thoại 1.

Dialogue Practice 1

Bạn đọc lại bài hội thoại trên và trả lời các câu hỏi sau:

1. What is his full name?

.....

2. What does he do?

.....

3. Where does he live?

.....

4. Does he travel all over the world?

.....

5. Has he been photographing the President?

.....

6. Where will he be in a few days?

.....

7. Why does he sometimes want to be with ordinary people?

.....

8. What is Janet like?

.....

9. Is his father a rich man?

.....

10. His mother is artistic, isn't she?

.....

11. What does he love?

.....

12. Will he and Janet go to the studio now?

.....

Sau khi bạn đã hoàn thành xong bài thực hành hội thoại 1, bạn chuyển tiếp sang bài thực hành hội thoại 2.

Dialogue Practice 2

Bây giờ bạn hãy đọc những thông tin thực về Fred.

FRED SMITH

Full name: Frederick George Smith

Age: 25

Address: 17 Victoria Terrace, Highbury, London N5

Profession: Van driver

Interests: photography, model aeroplanes

Education: Finsbury Park Comprehensive School

Qualifications: None

Father: Albert Eric Smith, 52, shop assistant

Mother: Florence Anne Smith, née Henderson, 48, housewife

Sau khi bạn đã đọc được những thông tin thực về Fred, bạn hãy quyết định xem những câu dưới đây mà Fred đã nói với Janet là đúng hay sai. Bạn hãy viết chữ T vào trước câu đúng và chữ F vào trước câu sai.

- ... 1. His name is Frederick Gretty Onassis.
- ... 2. His friends call him Fred.
- ... 3. He is a photographer.
- ... 4. He lives in Paris and California.
- ... 5. His father is a rich man.
- ... 6. He has got a studio in London.
- ... 7. His father has got a Boeing 747.
- ... 8. His father does something with oil and diamonds.
- ... 9. Her mother is an actress.
- ... 10. He is not interested in business himself.

Hoàn thành xong bài luyện hội thoại 2, bạn hãy chuyển sang bài luyện số 3.

Dialogue Practice 3

Trong bài hội thoại bạn thấy Janet đoán về công việc của Fred những điều mà cô tin chắc là đúng.

Bây giờ bạn hãy dùng "must be + adj" để dự đoán những điều mà bạn tin chắc là đúng.

Ví dụ: It / be / terribly interesting.

It must be terribly interesting.

1. The party / be / boring.
.....

2. It / be / nice.

.....
3. It / be / fantastic.

.....
4. The gift / be / wonderful.

.....
5. It / be / terrible.

.....
6. It / be / magnificent.

.....
7. It / be / true.

.....
8. He/ be / kind.

.....
9. They / be / friendly.

.....
10. She / be / very mean.

10B. STRUCTURE

Structure 1: Using "must" to express probability

(Sử dụng "must" để diễn tả khả n_ ng có thể xảy ra)

Bạn hãy nghiên cứu tình huống ví dụ dưới đây.

Alf là một cây vợt khá và không mấy ai hạ được anh ta. Vậy mà hôm qua anh ta chơi với Bill và Bill đã thắng. Như vậy:

Bill **must be** very good player.

Vậy Bill chắc chắn phải là một cây vợt rất khá (nếu không anh ta đã không thắng nổi Alf). Ở đây ta dùng "must" để nói rằng ta tin chắc việc đó là đúng. Chú ý: "must" là động từ đặc biệt trong tiếng Anh, dạng động từ này không thay đổi ở tất cả các ngôi. Nói cách khác, không bao giờ thêm "s" hoặc "ing" vào động từ này.

Trên đây là một ví dụ về cách dự đoán mà ta tin chắc là đúng. Bạn đã hiểu rõ cấu trúc này chưa? Nếu bạn đã hiểu rõ thì chuyển sang làm bài tập luyện cấu trúc 1, còn nếu bạn chưa rõ thì bạn hãy xem tiếp ví dụ sau:

Nhà của Alf rất gần với đường xa lộ. Alf nói với Bill:

My house is very near the motorway.

Bill tin chắc rằng nhà của Alf ở gần đường xa lộ nên rất ồn. Bill nói:

It must be very noisy.

Bây giờ bạn hãy tiếp tục làm bài tập luyện cấu trúc 1.

Structure Practice 1

Bạn hãy hoàn thành các câu sau sử dụng *must* với một động từ thích hợp, lưu ý có động từ được sử dụng nhiều lần.

be / go / read / get / have

1. You have been travelling all day. You very tired.
2. That restaurant very good. It's always full of people.
3. You are going on holiday next week. You looking forward to it.
4. Congratulations on passing your exam! You very pleased.
5. Carol very bored in her job. She does the same thing every day.
6. "Jim is a hard worker." "Jim? A hard worker? You joking. He's very lazy."
7. Carol knows a lot about films. She to the cinema a lot.
8. Brian has got three houses, six cars, a yacht and a helicopter. He a lot of money.
9. John seems to know a lot about history. He a lot of books.

Structure 2: Using "can't" to express probability

Trong phần Structure 1 bạn sử dụng cấu trúc "must" để nói những điều bạn tin chắc là đúng thì trong phần Structure 2 bạn sẽ học cách sử dụng cấu trúc "can't" để nói những điều bạn cho rằng không thể thực hiện được.

Bạn hãy đọc kỹ ví dụ sau đây:

Tom vừa mới ăn bữa tối xong. Do vậy Tom chắc chắn không thể đã đói ngay được. Ta có thể nói như sau:

Tom has just had dinner. Tom **can't** be hungry already.

Bây giờ bạn hãy làm bài tập luyện cấu trúc dưới đây.

Structure Practice 2. Viết câu dự đoán cho các tình huống sau, sử dụng “can’t” với một động từ thích hợp dưới đây. Lưu ý có động từ được sử dụng nhiều lần.

be / have / know

1. That restaurant very good. It's always empty.
2. It rained every day during their holiday, so they had a very nice time.
3. Bill and Sue go away on holiday very often, so they short of money.
4. They haven't live here for very long. They many people.
5. Ted isn't at work today. He ill.
6. (The doorbell rings) I wonder who that is. It Mary. She's still at work at this time.

Structure 3: Using "might", "could" and "probably" to express probability

ở phần này bạn sẽ học thêm về cách sử dụng "probably", "could" và "might" để diễn tả khả năng có thể hoặc không thể xảy ra.

Bạn hãy đọc ví dụ sau:

Bạn đang đi tìm Jack. Không ai biết chắc hiện anh ta ở đâu, nhưng được gợi ý như sau:

He might be having lunch. (Perhaps he is having lunch - có lẽ anh ấy đang ăn trưa.)

He might be in his office. (Perhaps he is in his office - có lẽ anh ta đang ở văn phòng.)

Ask Ann. She might know. (Perhaps Ann knows - có lẽ Ann biết.)

Về mức độ dự đoán thì khi bạn sử dụng "probably" thì khả năng có thể xảy ra là cao nhất, sau đó đến "could", rồi đến "might".

Và khi bạn dự đoán khả năng không thể xảy ra nhưng chưa phải là chắc chắn không xảy ra thì bạn sử dụng câu trúc "probably ... not".

Ví dụ: It is **probably not** true.

Bây giờ bạn hãy chuyển sang làm bài tập luyện cấu trúc 3 dưới đây.

Structure Practice 3

Trong bài tập này bạn hãy viết câu sử dụng "might" hoặc "could".

1. "Do you know if they are married?"

"I'm not sure. They might.....

2. She doesn't want to stay with Linda.

But she could

3. "Do you know if she wants to know?"

"I'm not sure. She might

4. "Do you know if she is telling the truth?"

- "I'm not sure. She might
5. They don't want to lend us any money.
But they could.....
6. "Do you know if she is serious?"
"I'm not sure. She might
7. He doesn't want to help us.
But he could.....
8. She doesn't want to have anything to eat.
But she could.....

Structure 4: Using "say" and "tell" in reported speech

(Sử dụng *say* và *tell* trong cách nói gián tiếp)

Trong bài trước bạn đã học cách sử dụng "say" và "tell" trong câu nói gián tiếp. Bài này tiếp tục xem rõ hơn phần ngữ pháp và làm thêm các bài tập luyện.

- Động từ "say" được sử dụng để nói lại điều một người nào đó vừa nói hoặc làm.
- Động từ "tell" cũng được sử dụng trong câu nói gián tiếp. Sau "tell" bao giờ cũng là danh từ hoặc một đại từ tên ngữ.

Ví dụ: He said that he was very tired the next morning.

He told me that he was very tired the next morning.

Khi chuyển từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp, có một số các thay đổi. Bạn hãy xem kỹ bảng dưới đây.

Direct speech	Indirect speech
Statements	
He said "I'm very tired."	He said he was very tired.
She said "I took it home with me."	She said she had taken it home with her.
He said "I have found a flat."	He said he had found a flat.
He said "They will come."	He said they would come.
Questions	
- Yes / No questions	
He said "Will they come?"	He asked if they would come.
He said "Was she late?"	He asked if she had been late.
He said "Has he gone?"	He asked if he had gone.

- Wh-questions

He said "Why was she late?"

He asked why she had been late.

He said "How do they go there?"

He asked how they went there.

He said "What has she done?"

He asked what she had done.

Other changes

1st person

3rd person

I he, she

me him, her

my

his, her

mine his, hers

myself himself, herself

we they

us them

our their

ours theirs

ourselves themselves

Time

now then

today

that day

tonight that night

ago before

yesterday

the previous day (the day before)

tomorrow

the following day, the next day

the day after tomorrow

in two days' time

yesterday morning

the previous morning

last year

the previous year

next week

the following week

tomorrow morning

the following morning

Place

here there
this that
these those

Sau khi đã nắm rõ phần lý thuyết, bạn làm bài luyện dưới đây.

Structure Practice 4. Chuyển các câu sau sang câu gián tiếp.

1. John said "I have to go to the dentist tomorrow."

.....

2. He said "My father died a year ago."

.....

3. "I'm starting the day after tomorrow, mother", he said.

.....

4. She said "My father doesn't go to the movies."

.....

5. The boy said "My mother will meet my father tomorrow."

.....

Structure 5: Reporting questions

Trong phần Structure 4 bạn đã nắm được cách chuyển từ câu nói trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp. Trong phần Structure 5 khi chuyển các câu hỏi từ trực tiếp sang gián tiếp bạn cần lưu ý một số đặc điểm quan trọng sau đây:

- Trình tự câu gián tiếp không giống với trình tự câu hỏi trực tiếp (trợ động từ + động từ).
- Không sử dụng trợ động từ "do" trong câu nói gián tiếp.
- Không có dấu hỏi chấm.
- Trước những câu hỏi không bắt đầu các đại từ để hỏi như: *who, where, how* thì trong câu gián tiếp sử dụng từ "If".

Ví dụ: He asked me "Are you hungry now?"

He asked me if I was hungry then.

He asked his sister "Where have you bought it?"

He asked his sister where she had bought it.

Bây giờ bạn hãy làm bài tập luyện cấu trúc số 5.

Structure Practice 5. Chuyển các câu sau sang câu gián tiếp.

1. Tom asked me "What do you do?"

.....

2. He asked his friend "Have you been to Australia?"

.....

3. "How much does it cost?", he asked.

.....

4. She asked John "Where did your father go yesterday?"

.....

5. The boy asked his mother "Will you meet my father tomorrow?"

.....

10C. LISTENING

Listening Practice 1

Trước khi nghe bạn hãy đọc kỹ các câu và cụm từ dưới đây. Bạn có thể đọc lại vài lần cho đến khi bạn hiểu rõ nghĩa của các câu đó.

1. I'd like some tickets for Monday night.
2. Just a moment.
3. We've got a few at seven pounds.
4. Can I have ten at four pounds?
5. I'll pay by credit card.
6. And your card number?
7. Pick the tickets up at least half an hour before the performance.

Listening Practice 2

Sau khi bạn đã hiểu rõ các ngữ trên, bây giờ bạn hãy nghe đoạn hội thoại (Unit 10. Listening) từ đầu đến cuối và đánh dấu vào đâu những câu mà bạn nghe thấy có trong bài hội thoại. Đây là cuộc hội thoại giữa người bán vé và người mua vé tại nhà hát Princess.

- ... 1. I'd like some tickets for Monday night.
... 2. Just a moment.
... 3. We've got a few at seven pounds.
... 4. Can I have ten at four pounds?
... 5. I'll pay by credit card.

... 6. And your card number?

... 7. Pick the tickets up at least half an hour before the performance.

Bạn hãy chuyển tiếp sang bài tập 3 dưới đây.

Listening Practice 3

Trong bài tập cuối cùng của phần nghe, bạn có thể nghe lại bài hội thoại 2 đến 3 lần nữa sau đó viết một bài tường thuật ngắn về bài hội thoại này. Lưu ý khi viết bạn phải sử dụng các cấu trúc câu tường thuật như:

The man asked if...

The woman said that...

Sau khi bạn đã hoàn thành xong toàn bộ các bài tập của phần nghe, bạn hãy chuyển sang phần đọc.

10D. READING

Đây là một phần của bức thư mà Janet viết gửi cho bạn của cô. Trong thư Janet đã kể cho bạn về một người đàn ông cô mới quen biết tên là Fred. Khi đọc bạn hãy chú ý đến cách viết những câu hỏi mà Fred đã hỏi cô:

... and so we took a taxi. He asked me where I lived, and what my parents were like, and wanted to know if I liked it there. I thought he must be interested in me if he wanted to know about my parents. He asked me if I liked good food, and asked me what my favourite wine was. I'm glad that wine programme was on the telly last week!

Then he asked me if I could get some time off work, and I said I thought so. He asked me when I could phone the shop and I said I'd have to wait until the next morning. Well, by this time we were at the studio. It was a wonderful building - all closed as it was so late, of course. He only had Italian money, so he asked me if I could lend him 5 pounds for the taxi. And then he didn't have a key to the studio, so he asked me if I had a credit card, and he used it to open the door! I was a bit surprised, but I thought that artists must live a bit differently from the rest of us.

Well, you'll never guess what happened then! He was showing me the studio when a man walked in and...

Reading Practice 1

Bạn hãy đọc bức thư này một lượt từ đầu đến cuối, sau đó dựa vào các câu hỏi cho dưới đây để tưởng tượng xem chuyện gì sẽ xảy ra tiếp theo: ...*The man asked:*

- "Who are you?"
- "Do you work here?"
- "What are you doing here?"

- "Do you know those are my lights?"
- "How long have you been here?"

Sau khi bạn đã hoàn thành bài luyện đọc 1, bạn hãy chuyển sang bài luyện đọc 2.

Reading Practice 2

Trong bài luyện đọc 2, bạn hãy tiếp tục viết đoạn kết của bức thư này, dựa vào các cụm từ gợi ý sau:

- Fred / say / nothing.
-

- At that time / I / realise / he/ liar.
-

- Everything / he /tell / not true /except his name.
-

- Anyway / it / precious experience / me.
-

Reading Practice 3

Bây giờ bạn hãy đọc lại bức thư ở trên sau đó làm bài tập luyện số 3. Trong bài luyện này, bạn hãy chuyển các câu gián tiếp sau thành câu hỏi trực tiếp.

1. He asked me where I lived.
-

2. He asked me what my parents were like.
-

3. He asked me if I liked living there.
-

4. He asked me if I liked good food.
-

5. He asked me what my favourite wine was.
-

6. He asked me if I could get some time off work.
-

7. He asked me when I could phone the shop.
-

8. I said I'd have to wait until the next morning.

.....

9. He asked me if I could lend him 5 pounds for the taxi.

.....

10. He asked me if I had got a credit card.

.....

Bạn hãy kiểm tra lại câu trả lời của bạn trong phần Key to Reading, sau đó đọc to và trôi chảy từng câu trong bài đọc.

Bạn đã học xong các cấu trúc ngữ pháp và làm bài tập của Unit 10. Bạn có thể nghỉ giải lao. Sau đó bạn hãy đọc phần Summary và xem lại phần Unit objectives để ôn lại toàn bài. Tiếp theo bạn hãy làm bài Self-test.

SUMMARY

Tới lúc này bạn đã học tất cả những nội dung ghi trong phần Tóm tắt dưới đây. Nếu chưa nắm vững phần nào, bạn hãy đọc lại phần đó và làm các bài tập cho đến khi bạn đạt được mục đích của bài học.

Trong Unit 10 bạn đã học những vấn đề sau:

1. Sử dụng cấu trúc trúc với "must" để dự đoán khả năng mà bạn tin chắc chắn xảy ra.

You must be very kind.

She must know them.

They must be very strong.

2. Sử dụng cấu trúc trúc với "can't" để dự đoán những điều bạn tin rằng không thể thực hiện được.

Tom has just dinner. He can't be hungry already.

She is very rich. She can't be short of money.

John is very strong. He can't be ill.

3. Sử dụng "might", "could" và "probably" để dự đoán khả năng có thể xảy ra hoặc không xảy ra tùy theo mức độ.

He might be having lunch.

He could be in his office.

It is probably not true.

4. Cách sử dụng "say" và "tell" trong câu nói gián tiếp.

He said he was very tired the next morning.

He told me that he was very tired the next morning.

They said that they had lived there all their lives.

5. Cách chuyển các câu hỏi trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp.

He asked if he could borrow his friend some money.

They asked their mother where they had been born.

She asked her husband where they would have dinner.

SELF-TEST

Thời gian tối đa để hoàn thành bài tự kiểm tra này là 90 phút. Điểm số dành cho mỗi câu hỏi được ghi trong ngoặc ở đầu mỗi câu hỏi. Nếu trả lời đúng tất cả các câu hỏi, bạn đã hoàn thành được Unit 10.

Chú ý: Bạn cần tự trả lời tất cả các câu hỏi trước khi xem “Key to Self-test”.

I. Fill in the blanks with *might*, *can't* or *must*. (10 points)

1. I go to Spain next week, but I'm not sure yet.
2. "Isn't that Joan over there?" "No, it be her - Joan's much taller than that."
3. There's somebody at the door. Do you think it be the postman?
4. "I've been travelling since four o'clock" "You be tired."
5. "We haven't made definite plans for our holiday yet. We go to Greece or Italy, or we even stay at home."
6. This be John's coat. There's a letter addressed to him in the pocket.
7. "I'm getting married next week." "You mean it!" "I do".

II. Make these sentences in reported speech. (10 points)

Example: "It's cold." - She said it was cold.

1. "I'm tired."

She said

2. "Are you a doctor?"

He asked her

3. "Where is my husband?"

She wanted to know

4. "What time does the next bus leave?"

He asked

5. "You can't have any money."

I told him.....

III. What did they say? Rewrite the sentences using reported speech. (15 points)

Example:

Dolores Ibarruri: "It is better to die on your feet than to live on your knees!"

Dolores Ibarruri said that it was better to die on your feet than to live on your knees.

1. Virginia Woolf: "The eyes of others are our prisons; their thoughts are our cages."

.....

2. Texas Guinan: "Success has killed more than bullets."

.....

3. Eleanor Roosevelt: "No one can make you feel inferior without your consent."

.....

4. Mae West: "Between two evils, I always pick the one I've never tried before." Also "Too much of a good thing can be wonderful."

.....

5. Dodie Smith: "Noble deeds and hot baths are the best cures for depression."

.....

6. Adele Smith: "Thousands upon thousands of persons have studied disease; almost no one has studied health."

.....

7. Mother Teresa: "Our work brings people face to face with love."

.....

IV. Write what you think of these sentences, using the suggestions. (15 points)

It must be true.	It's probably true.
It could be true.	It might be true.
It's probably not true.	It can't be true.

1. Some early skis have been found which are at least 4,500 years old.

.....

2. A long time ago, mountains in Norway, Scotland, Greenland and the north-east US belonged to the same mountains chain.

.....

3. When powerful people choose people to work with them, they usually choose people who will lie to them about how well things are going.

.....

4. There is a fish that is more poisonous than any poisonous snake.

.....

5. Some animals living very deep in the ocean can "see" the extremely hot water that comes up from the ocean floor.

.....

6. Our ideas about what makes a person good-looking depend partly on what country we grew up in.

.....

7. In 1988, the greatest physicist in the world was a man who could not write, or even speak clearly.

.....

8. Most algebra problems cannot be solved.

.....

9. We will never be able to predict the weather accurately for longer than a few days.

.....

10. The soil in the South of Vietnam is very rich and fertile.

.....

V. Give the past and past participle of these verbs. (20 points)

Example: break - broke - broken

	Infinitive verb	Past	Past participle
1.	blow		
2.	build		
3.	choose		
4.	cut		
5.	dry		
6.	fall		
7.	feel		
8.	grow		
9.	happen		

10. hate		
11. learn		
12. make		
13. marry		
14. pay		
15. show		
16. steal		
17. stop		
18. teach		
19. think		
20. study		

KEY TO DIALOGUE

Dialogue Practice 1

1. His full name is Frederick Gretty Onassis.
2. He is a photographer.
3. He lives in Paris and California.
4. Yes, he does.
5. Yes, he has been photographing the President.
6. He'll be in Tokyo for a fashion show.
7. Because they have more character.
8. She is interesting. She has a very unusual face and wonderful eyes.
9. No, he isn't.
10. Yes, she is.
11. He loves nature, poetry, ideas and beauty.
12. Yes, they will.

Dialogue Practice 2

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. F | 2. T | 3. F | 4. F | 5. F |
| 6. F | 7. F | 8. F | 9. F | 10. T |

Dialogue Practice 3

1. The party must be boring.
6. It must be magnificent.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 2. It must be nice. | 7. It must be true. |
| 3. It must be fantastic. | 8. He must be kind. |
| 4. The gift must be wonderful. | 9. They must be friendly. |
| 5. It must be terrible. | 10. She must be very mean. |

KEY TO STRUCTURE

Structure Practice 1

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. You must be very tired. | 6. You must be joking. |
| 2. That restaurant must be very good. | 7. She must go to the cinema a lot. |
| 3. You must be looking forward to it. | 8. He must have a lot of money. |
| 4. You must be very pleased. | 9. He must read a lot of books. |
| 5. Carol must get / be very bored in her job. | |

Structure Practice 2

1. That restaurant can't be very good. It's always empty.
2. It rained every day during their holiday, so they can't have had a very nice time.
3. Bill and Sue go away on holiday very often, so they can't be short of money.
4. They haven't live here for very long. They can't know many people.
5. Ted isn't at work today. He must be ill.
6. (The doorbell rings) I wonder who that is. It can't be Mary. She's still at work at this time.

Structure Practice 3

1. "Do you know if they are married?" "I'm not sure. They might be married".
2. She doesn't want to stay with Linda. But she could stay with Linda.
3. "Do you know if she wants to know?" "I'm not sure. She might want to know."
4. "Do you know if she is telling the truth?" "I'm not sure. She might be telling the truth."
5. They don't want to lend us any money. But they could lend us some money.
6. "Do you know if she is serious?" "I'm not sure. She might be serious."
7. He doesn't want to help us. But he could help us.
8. She doesn't want to have anything to eat. But she could have something to eat.

Structure Practice 4

1. John said he had to go to the dentist the next day.
2. He said his father had died a year before.
3. He said he was starting in two days' time.
4. She said her father didn't go to the movies.
5. The boy said his mother would meet his father the next day.

Structure Practice 5

1. Tom asked me what I did.
2. He asked his friend if he had been to Australia.
3. He asked how much it cost.
4. She asked John where his father had gone the day before.
5. The boy asked his mother if she would meet his father the day after tomorrow.

KEY TO LISTENING

Listening Practice 1

Tapescript

A: Princess Theatre .
B: Have you got any tickets for Monday night?
A: Just a moment. I'll have a look... sorry to keep you waiting. Yes, we've got a few at seven pounds fifty and plenty at ten pounds and fifteen pounds.
B: Can I have four at ten pounds?
A: How do you want to pay?
B: Can I pay by credit card?
A: Yes, of course. Can I have your name and address, please?
B: Michael Buxton, 33 Peace Avenue, Runcorn.
A: And your card number?
B: 4332 7171 2809 7755.
A: Thank you. That's four tickets at ten pounds for Monday the 17th at 8 o'clock. Please call me at the theatre and pick the tickets up at least half an hour before the performance.
B: OK. Thanks very much.
A: Thank you. Bye.

B: Bye.

Listening Practice 2

2

4

6

7

Listening Practice 3

A man phoned the theatre and asked if they had any tickets for Monday night. The woman in the office said they had. The man said he wanted ten at ten pounds, and asked if he could pay by credit card. The woman said that was all right, and asked the man for his name and address. She told him that he had to pick up the tickets half an hour before the performance.

KEY TO READING

Reading Practice 1

Well, you'll never guess what happened then! He was showing me the studio when a man walked in and *asked Fred who he was. He asked him if he worked there, and what he was doing there. He asked Fred if he knew those were the man' lights. He asked him how long we had been there.*

Reading Practice 2 (possible answer)

Fred said nothing. At that time I realised that he told a lie. Everything he told me was not true except his name. Anyway, it was a precious experience for me.

Reading Practice 3

1. He asked me "Where do you live?"
2. He asked me "What are your parents like?"
3. He asked me "Do you like living there?"
4. He asked me "Do you like good food?"
5. He asked me "What is your favourite wine?"
6. He asked me "Can you get some time off work?"
7. He asked me "When can you phone the shop?"
8. Janet said "I will have to wait until the next morning."
9. He asked me "Can you lend me 5 pounds for the taxi?"
- 10 He asked me "Have you got a credit card?"

KEY TO SELF-TEST

I.

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1. might | 5. might |
| 2. can't | 6. must |
| 3. might | 7. can't |
| 4. must | |

II.

1. She said she was tired.
2. He asked her if she was a doctor.
3. She wanted to know where her husband was.
4. She asked what time the next bus left.
5. I told him that he could not have any money.

III.

1. Virginia Woolf said that the eyes of others were our prisons; their thoughts were our cages.
2. Texas Guinan said that success had killed more than bullets.
3. Eleanor Roosevelt said that no one could make you feel inferior without your consent.
4. Mae West said that between two evils, she always picked the one she had never tried before. She also said that too much of a good thing could be wonderful.
5. Dodie Smith said that noble deeds and hot baths were the best cures for depression.
6. Adele Smith said that thousands upon thousands of persons had studied disease; almost no one had studied health.
7. Mother Teresa said that our work brought people face to face with love.

IV.

All the statements are true.

V.

	Infinitive verb	Past	Past participle
1. blow		blew	blown
2. build		built	built
3. choose		chose	chosen
4. cut		cut	cut
5. dry		dried	dried
6. fall		fell	fallen

7. feel		felt	felt
8. grow		grew	grown
9. happen		happened	happened
10. hate		hated	hated
11. learn		learnt/learned	learnt/learned
12. make		made	made
13. marry		married	married
14. pay		paid	paid
15. show		showed	shown
16. steal		stole	stolen
17. stop		stopped	stopped
18. teach		taught	taught
19. think		thought	thought
19. studied		studied	studied

VOCABULARY

artistic [ə:tistik]	adj thuộc nghệ thuật
algebra ['ældʒibrə]	n đại số học
beauty	n vẻ đẹp, người đẹp
bullet ['bulit]	n đạn súng ngắn/ súng trường
cage [keidʒ]	n lồng, chuồng, cũi
consent [kən'sent]	n sự đồng ý, sự tán thành
cure [kjue]	n cách chữa bệnh, điều trị, phương thuốc
deed [di:d]	n việc làm, hành động
depression [di'preʃn]	n sự chán nản, sự thất vọng
evil [i:vl]	n điều xấu xa, bất hạnh, đen đủi
fantastic adj kỳ diệu, tuyệt diệu	
inferior [in'fiəriə]	adj thấp kém hơn, thấp hơn
knee [ni:]	n đầu gối
liar ['laiə]	n người nói dối, kẻ dối trá
mean [mi:n]	adj hè tiện, keo kiệt

Unit 10: He asked me if...

motorway	n xa lộ, đường ô tô chạy nhanh
nature [neitʃə]	n tự nhiên, bản chất
néé	adj tên khai sinh là, tên con gái là
noble ['noubl]	adj cao quý, cao thượng
ocean floor	n đáy đại dương
poetry ['pouitri]	n thơ, nghệ thuật thơ ca
poisonous ['pɔizənəs]	adj độc, có độc
powerful ['pauəfl]	adj mạnh mẽ, có quyền lực
probably [prɔbəbli]	adv có thể xảy ra
snake [sneik]	n con rắn
studio ['stju:dio]	n xưởng phim
van [væn]	n xe tải, xe chở hàng
yacht [jot]	n du thuyền

TÀI LIỆU THAM KHẢO

1. Ackert, P.& A. L Nebel. *Concepts and Comments*. Nhà xuất bản trẻ. 2019.
2. Azar B. S. *Fundamentals of English Grammar*. Prentice Hall Regents. 1989.
3. Azar B. S. *Understanding and Using English Grammar*. Nhà xuất bản trẻ. 2016.
4. Đỗ Văn Thảo. *225 bài tập tiếng Anh chuyên đề công nghệ thông tin*. Nhà xuất bản giáo dục. 2000.
5. Doof, A. et al. *Meaning into words*. Cambridge University Press. 1985.
6. Gray, J. *Starting English*. Cassell Publisher Ltd. London. 1983.
7. Michael, S & C. Walter. *The New Cambridge English Course*. Cambridge University Press. 1990.
8. Murphy, R. *English Grammar in Use*. Nhà xuất bản trẻ. 2003.
9. Murphy, R. *Essential Grammar in Use*. Cambridge University Press. 1994.
10. Nguyễn Việt Long - Lê Ngọc Tú. *Những bài thi trắc nghiệm tiếng Anh*. NXB Thế giới. 2017
11. Pamela, H. & J. Mentel. *Interactions Access*. McGraw-Hill Contemporary. 2000.
12. Xuân Bá. *Bài tập các thì và mạo từ tiếng Anh*. Nhà xuất bản thế giới. 2002.
13. Xuân Bá. *Bài tập luyện viết tiếng Anh*. Nhà xuất bản thế giới. 2002a.

MỤC LỤC

LÀI NÓI ĐÃU.....	3
UNIT 1. WHO'S WHO?	3
Introduction.....	3
Unit objectives	3
1A. Dialogue.....	3
1B. Structure	4
1C. Listening.....	13
1D. Reading	14
Summary.....	15
Self-test	15
Key to Structure Exercises.....	18
Key to Pronunciation	20
Key to Listening.....	20
Key to Reading	21
Key to Self-test	21
Vocabulary.....	22
UNIT 2. I'M AFRAID I'VE HAD AN ACCIDENT.....	24
Introduction.....	24
Unit objectives	24
2A. Dialogue.....	24
2B. Structure	25
2C. Listening.....	32
2D. Reading	33
Summary.....	34
Self-test	35
Key to Dialogue.....	39
Key to Structure.....	39
Key to Listening.....	40
Key to Reading	41
Key to Self-test	41

Vocabulary.....	43
UNIT 3. PLEASE SPEAK MORE SLOWLY	44
Introduction.....	44
Unit objectives	44
3A. Dialogue.....	44
3B. Structure	47
3C. Listening.....	49
3D. Reading	51
Summary.....	55
Self-test	56
Key to Dialogue.....	59
Key to Structure.....	60
Key to Listening.....	61
Key to Reading	62
Key to Self-test	63
Vocabulary.....	64
UNIT 4. ARE YOU SURE YOU'LL BE ALL RIGHT?.....	66
Introduction.....	66
Unit objectives	66
4A. Dialogue.....	66
4B. Structure	70
4C. Listening.....	72
4D. Reading	74
Summary.....	77
Self-test	78
Key to Dialogue.....	81
Key to Structure.....	82
Key to Listening.....	83
Key to Reading	84
Key to Self-test	85
Vocabulary.....	87
UNIT 5. I WAS GETTING READY TO COME HOME.....	89
Introduction.....	89
Unit objectives	89
5A. Dialogue.....	89
5B. Structure	92

5C. Listening.....	96
5D. Reading	98
Summary.....	99
Self-test	100
Key to Dialogue.....	103
Key to Structure.....	103
Key to Listening.....	104
Key to Reading	106
Key to Self-test	107
Vocabulary.....	107
UNIT 6. HEAVY SNOW HAS BEEN FALLING...	110
Introduction.....	110
Unit objectives	110
6A. Dialogue.....	110
6B. Structure	113
6C. Listening.....	115
6D. Reading	117
Summary.....	119
Self-test	120
Key to Dialogue.....	124
Key to Structure.....	124
Key to Listening.....	125
Key to Reading	126
Key to Self-test	127
Vocabulary.....	128
UNIT 7. MARY SAID THAT.....	130
Introduction.....	130
Unit objectives	130
7A. Dialogue.....	130
7B. Structure	132
7C. Listening.....	135
7D. Reading	137
Summary.....	139
Self-test	140
Key to Dialogue.....	144
Key to Structure.....	144

Key to Listening.....	145
Key to Reading	146
Key to Self-test	147
Vocabulary.....	148
UNIT 8. IF I WERE YOU,.....	150
Introduction.....	150
Unit objectives	150
8A. Dialogue.....	150
8B. Structure	153
8C. Listening.....	158
8D. Reading	159
Summary.....	161
Self-test	162
Key to Dialogue.....	166
Key to Structure.....	166
Key to Listening.....	167
Key to Reading	168
Key to Self-test	169
Vocabulary.....	171
UNIT 9. HOW ABOUT THURSDAY?	173
Introduction.....	173
Unit objectives	173
9A. Dialogue.....	173
9B. Structure	176
9C. Listening.....	180
9C. Reading	182
Summary.....	183
Self-test	184
Key to Dialogue.....	187
Key to Structure.....	188
Key to Listening.....	189
Key to Reading	190
Key to Self-test	190
Vocabulary.....	192
UNIT 10. HE ASKED ME IF...	194
Introduction.....	194

Mục lục

Unit objectives	194
10A. Dialogue.....	194
10B. Structure	198
10C. Listening.....	204
10D. Reading	205
Summary.....	207
Self-test	208
Key to Dialogue.....	211
Key to Structure.....	212
Key to Listening.....	213
Key to Reading	214
Key to Self-test	215
Vocabulary.....	216
TÀI LIỆU THAM KHẢO.....	218
MỤC LỤC	219